

SERIES

# SCIENCE

The Main Book

By A Group of Supervisors



Scanned with CamScanner



# SCIENCE

By A Group of Supervisors







### ΛL ΤΛLΛΒΛ BOOKSTORE

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com
www.elmoasserbooks.com

### The Main Book



Name School: Class: Year Egyptian National Library Cataloging - in - publishing prepared by Technical Affairs Department El-Moasser Science by a group of supervisors. -Cairo: GPS for printing, publication and distribution, 2023 3 vols; 30 cm. For 4th primary first term. I.S.B.N.: 978 - 977 - 839 - 704 - 8 1- Science - study and teaching (primary) 372.35 2- Education, primary. Dep. No. 8743 / 2023

## **Introduction**

**Dear parents...** At the beginning of the third millennium, forming a new Egyptian character should be given due care and attention. That character should be equipped with values, skills and knowledge to cope with the world rapidly changing development.

The pre-university educational system has already developed to be aligned with the sustainable development strategy (Egypt vision 2030). It stems from a firm belief that the traditional curriculum based on spoon-feeding strategy is no longer sufficient. We should move to a new science curriculum which adopts a student-centered strategy. This strategy enhances our children's communication skills and develops their problem solving and critical thinking skills.

**El-Moasser Book Series** has the honour to present you "the Parent's guide" for the "science" textbook. For the primary stage, grade four.

This guide introduces a wide range of interesting activities which support the science textbook themes. In addition, it presents full detailed instructions for parents, to support their children in their learning process. El-Moasser believes in making the learning process a pleasure which starts from the classroom and continues at home.

THE AUTHORS

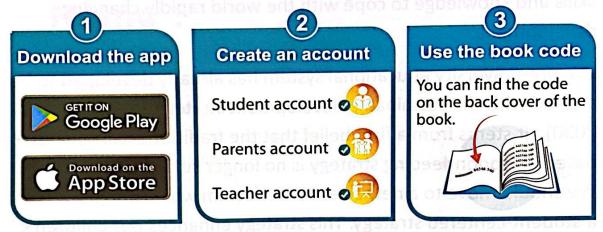
# **New Application GPS**



Interactive application presented from...



# How to use the application?



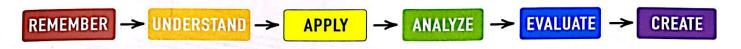
**Enjoy** 

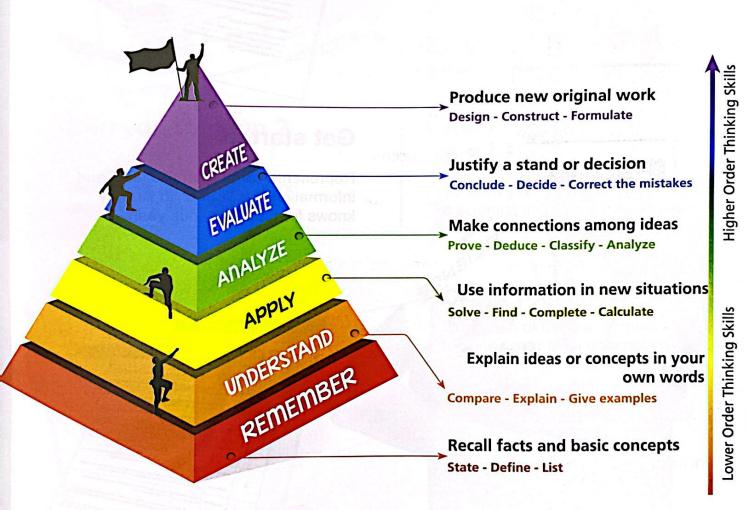
Interactive learning on all subjects and get all the app features free.



## Bloom's Taxonomy Of Cognitive Levels

Bloom's Taxonomy is an educational classification created by Benjamin Bloom, it is often represented as a pyramid. This taxonomy was revised to include six cognitive levels graded form the lower level to the higher level as follows:





### Bloom's Revised Pyramid

### Note:

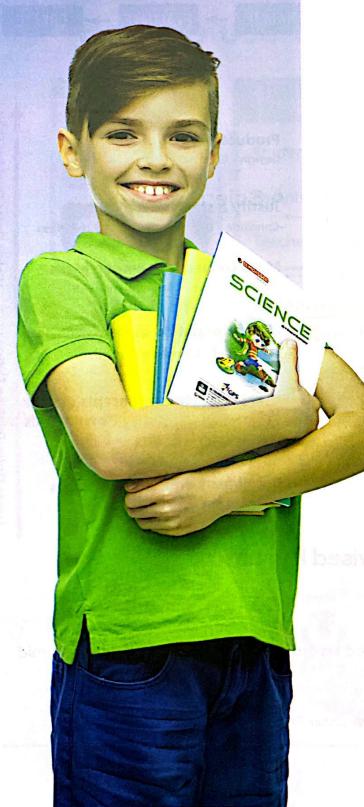
Questions within each exercise are classified according to the levels of Bloom's pyramid and are referred to as follows:

UNDERSTAND

O APPLY

Higher Thinking Skills

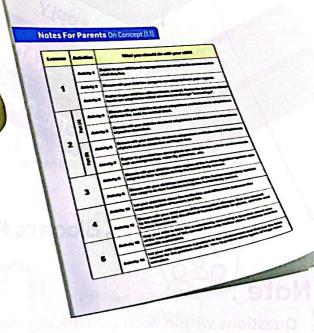
# **How** to use this guide?





### **Get started**

Represents some scientific facts and information that your child already knows from the previous years.



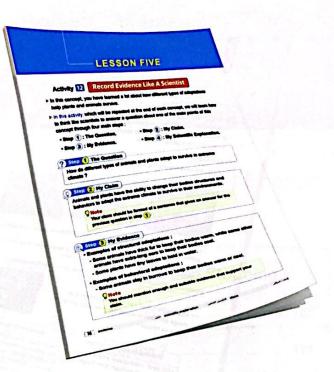
### **Notes for parents**

Represents what the parents should do, to help their child to understand this activity.



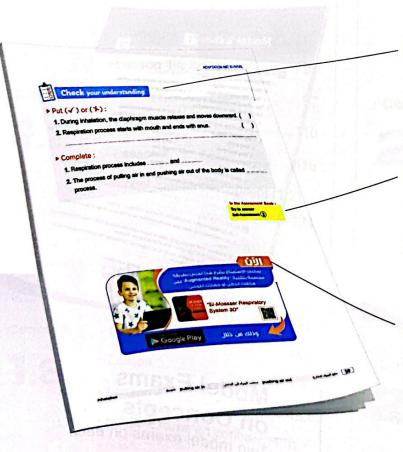
### Can you Explain?

Represents an overview at the beginning of each concept.



# Record Evidence like A Scientist

To learn your child how to think like a scientist through four main steps.



### Check your understanding

Questions at the end of each activity to check your child understanding.

### In the Assessment Book

A hint for your child to answer the self-assessments on lessons in the "Assessment Book".

### **Augmented Reality lessons**

Scan the QR code to enjoy studying the human body systems through the "Augmented Reality" lessons.



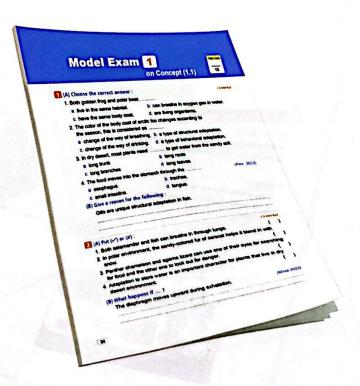
### **Stem in Action**

Allow your child to connect technology, engineering and math to his/her understanding of science concept to develop his/her creativity and problemsolving.



### **Exercises on Lessons**

Varient questions on each lesson.



# Model Exams on Concepts

Two model exams on each concept.

# Contents

THEME ONE: Systems

**UNIT ONE: Living Systems** 

	- Lesson 2 (Part A)	25
Concept	- Lesson 2 (Part B)	38
1.1	- Lesson 3	50
	- Lesson 4	68

- Model Exams on concept (1.1)

Senses at Work:

Adaptation and Survival:

- Lesson 1 ...... 15

Concept -

1.2

- Lesson 1	91
- Lesson 2	97
- Lesson 3	110
- Lesson 4	116
- Model Exams on conce	pt (1.2)
	124

Concept

1.3

Light and Sight :	
- Lesson 1	131
- Lesson 2	141
- Lesson 3	149
- Lesson 4	153
- Model Exams on concept (	1.3)
	157

THEME TWO: Matter and Energy

**UNIT TWO: Motion** 

	Starting and Stopping :
	- Lesson 1 165
Concept	- Lesson 2 171
21	- Lesson 3 182
	- Lesson 4 189
	- Model Exams on concept (2.1)
	192

- Lesson 1 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 199

2.2

Concept

- Lesson 2 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 208
- Lesson 3 \_\_\_\_\_ 216
- Lesson 4 \_\_\_\_\_ 225

**Energy and Motion:** 

- Model Exams on concept (2.2)

Energy and Collisions :
- Lesson 1 \_\_\_\_\_\_ 237

Concept

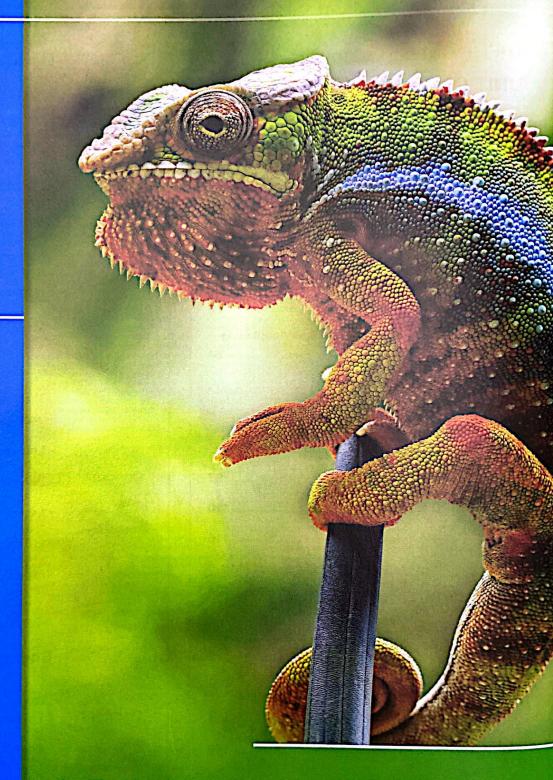
2.3

- Lesson 2 245
- Lesson 3 253
- Lesson 4 261

- Model Exams on concept (2.3)

# THEME ONE: SYSTEMS

UNIT



LIVING SYSTEMS

# **Get Started**

### What I Already Know

- There are many factors that affect the life of living organisms in their environments such as :
  - Hot and cold temperature.
  - Availability of food.

- Amount of water.
- Availability of shelter.
- Overtime, animals and plants adapt or change according to the previous factors, so that they can live, eat, breathe, stay safe and so on.

### **Examples:**

 Camel's body is covered with a special thick hairy skin to protect it from the hot weather in desert.



Camel

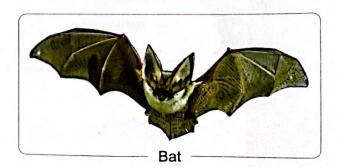
 Palm trees have strong roots to fix them in the soil against strong winds in desert.



Palm tree

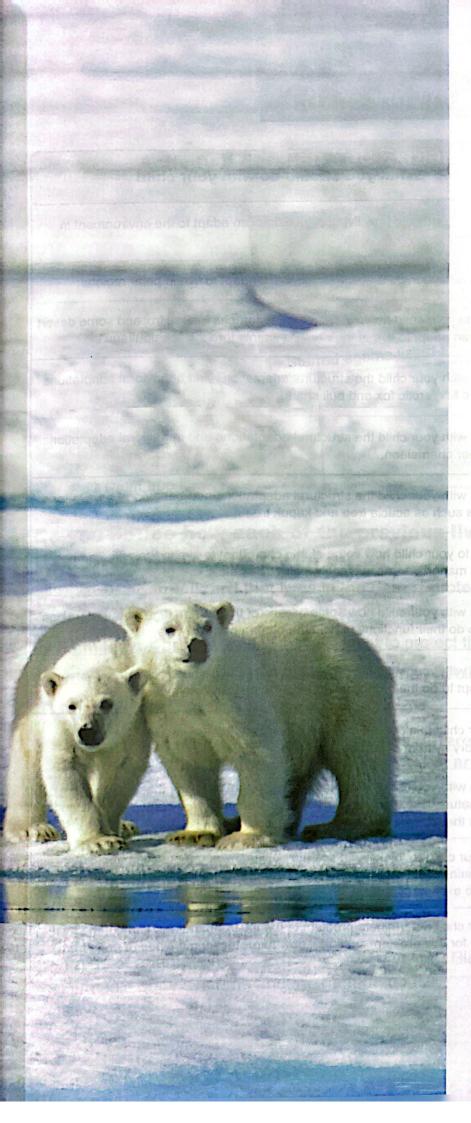
- In this unit, you are going to study :
  - Types of adaptations of living organisms.
  - How humans and animals use their senses to gather (collect) information.
  - Adaptations of some animals that are active at night.
  - How humans and animals communicate and transfer information.
- Unit Project : "Bat Chat"

At the end of this unit, you will make a research project about "Bats" to learn how their adaptations help them to navigate, hunt and communicate.



Concept 1.1 Adaptation and Survival

Scanned with CamScanner



### **Learning outcomes**

# By the end of this concept, your child will be able to:

- Model the relationships among an organism's survival, habitat, adaptations and body systems.
- Argue from evidence that plants and animals have structures and behaviors that help them survive and grow.
- Explain how structural adaptations help organisms survive in specific environments.
- Argue from evidence that multiple adaptations or organs work together in systems to help organisms survive in specific habitats.

### Key vocabulary

Adaptation

Arctic

Camouflage

Digestive system

Ecosystem

Energy

Extinct

Ocean

Organism

Pollute

Predator

Prey

Reproduce

Survive

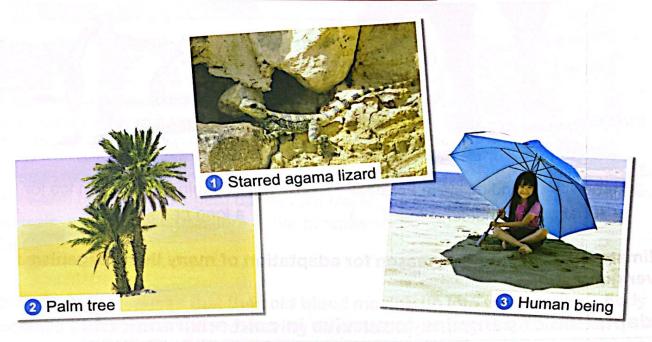
Respiratory system

# Notes For Parents On Concept (1.1)

Les	sons	Activities	What you should do with your child
	illava. Dvbo	Activity 1	Explain to your child how living organisms can adapt to the environment in which they live.
•	1	Activity 2	Discuss with your child how penguins can adapt to live in polar regions.
		Activity 3	Explain to your child how different bears, caracal, fennec fox and some desert lizards can adapt to live in their environments through "camouflage".
	Part (A)	Activity 4	Discuss with your child the structural adaptations and behavioral adaptations of fennec fox, arctic fox and bull shark.
0	Part	Activity 5	Discuss with your child the structural adaptations and behavioral adaptations of panther chameleon.
2	(B)	Activity 6	Discuss with your child the structural adaptations and behavioral adaptations of plants such as acacia tree and kapok tree.
5	Part (B)	Activity 7	Explain to your child how some plants can adapt to live in their environments such as mangrove tree, water lily, palm treeetc.
		Activity 8	Discuss with your child how some organs of the human digestive system can adapt to do their functions to help the human body survive.
	3	Activity 9	Discuss with your child how some organs of the human respiratory system can adapt to do their functions to help the human body survive.
		Activity 10	Let your child think about the similarities and differences between the respiratory system of humans and fish.
	4	Activity 11	Discuss with your child some of the ecosystem changes that are caused by the nature and also the effect of human activities on plants, animals and humans themselves.
		Activity 12	Help your child to think like a scientist by answering a question about one of the main points of this concept then write his/her claim, evidence and the scientific explanation.
	5	Activity 13	Let your child determine a problem in the environment and find out the best solution for this problem such as : how to protect some types of frogs from extinction.

### **LESSON ONE**

**Can You Explain?** Activity 1



### Do you notice how each of the previous living organisms protect itself from extreme hot climate?

- 1 Starred agama lizard that lives in the desert protects itself by finding shaded area during a hot sunny day to keep its body cool.
- Palm leaves are covered with waxy layer to protect them from extreme hot climate.
- 3 Human being protects himself from extreme hot climate by using umbrella and light clothes.
- ▶ Each of the previous living organisms has different ways to protect itself from extreme hot climate, and these different ways are known as "Adaptations".

### Adaptations:

They are characteristics that help living organisms to survive and reproduce in the ecosystem in which they live.

Adaptations occur over many generations.

- In this concept, we will study:
  - Types of adaptations.
  - Human's body systems and their adaptations.

· Plant adaptations.

Note

نظام بیئی ecosystem يبقى حيًا interact يتكاثر يتفاعل

extreme سحلية العجمة agama lizard hot climate منطقة الظل shade area waxy layer adaptation طبقة شمعية

شدید survive المناخ الحار reproduce characteristics

generations صفات

15 أجيال

Ecosystem is an area in which

living and nonliving things interact with each other.

### Activity 2 Penguin Feet

▶ Look at the following pictures, then put (√) or (x):



1 You can stand on ice in barefeet for about 5 minutes.



Penguin can walk on ice for a long period of time.

Climate is considered one reason for adaptation of many living organisms over generations.

### Adaptation of penguins to survive in cold environment:

Unlike most birds, penguins cannot fly but they can stand on ice all day.

· Habitat :

Penguin in Antarctica lives in a polar climate that is one of the coldest places on the Earth.

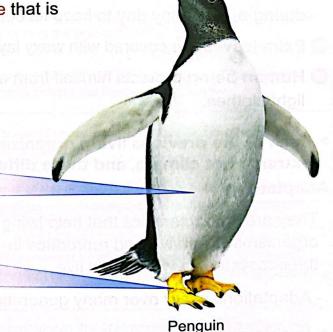
Adaptation :

### Its body:

Penguin's body is covered with dense feathers and a thick layer of fat to keep its body warm.

#### Its feet:

Penguin's feet have no feathers.



### Note

Habitat is the environment where living organisms live in.

barefeet

القارة القطبية الجنوبية Antarctica

dense feathers حافي القدمين penguin

warm بطريق

polar climate ریش کثیف

المناخ القطبى

habitat environment موطن السئة

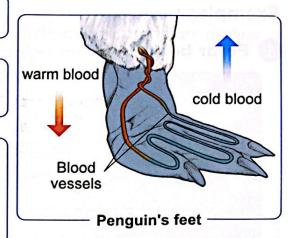
### How do the penguin's feet stay warm?

The penguin's feet stay warm due to the way of moving the blood in blood vessels through its feet as follows:

Blood vessels bring cold blood up from the feet.

Other blood vessels bring warm blood down to the feet from the feather-coated body.

These vessels weave around each other, so the warm blood vessels heat up the cold blood vessels, and the heat transfers to the penguin's feet.



 This adaptation causes that the cold blood moving up into the penguin's body becomes warm and the blood moving down to the penguin's toes is warm enough to keep its toes from freezing.

# Give reason for ...

Penguins' feet help them survive in cold climate.

Because blood vessels that carry warm blood from the body weave around the blood vessels that carry cold blood from the feet. This leads to warming the blood vessels of the penguin's feet to survive in cold climate.

### Check your understanding

- ▶ Put (√) or (x):
  - 1. The blood vessels coming downwards to the penguin's feet carry warm blood.
  - 2. Penguins can adapt to live in extreme cold environment by having feathers and fat in their feet.

1	)
(	,

blood vessels freezing

أوعية دموية

toes enough weave أصابع الأرجل

adapt

#### **Adaptations for Survival** Activity 3

Some animals have some adaptations that help them survive and reproduce in their different environments.

### **Examples:**

1 Polar bear



Polar bear

- Habitat: Arctic region (polar region).
- Adaptation :

It has white and thick fur:

- Its white fur helps it blend in with the snow as it sneaks up on its prey.
- Its thick fur helps it stay warm in its cold arctic region.

Brown bear and black bear





Brown bear

Black bear

- Habitat : Forests.
- Adaptation :

They have dark fur to help them hide among the trees when they hunt.

3 Caracal and fennec fox



Caracal

Fennec fox

- Habitat : Desert
- Adaptation :

They have sandy-colored fur (tan-colored fur) to help them blend in with desert landscapes.

Some desert lizards



Desert lizard

- Habitat : Desert
- Adaptation :

They have colorful scales that make them hide among the colorful rocks in the desert.

arctic region blend caracal landscapes

forests منطقة القطب الشمالي المناظر الطبيعية

hunt يندمج sneak up القط البري scales يصطاد يتسلل

fennec fox الغابات hide

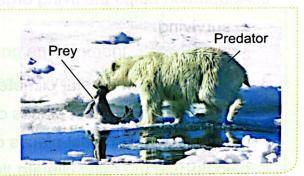
ثعلب الفنك حراشيف يخفي • From the previous examples, we notice that some animals adapt in many ways to hide from their predators or their preys by a way of adaptation called "camouflage".

### Camouflage:

It is a type of adaptation that some animals use to hide from their predators or their preys by blending in with the surrounding environments.

### Notes

- 1. Predator is an animal that hunts and eats another animal.
- 2. Prey is an animal that is hunted and eaten by another animal.





### Check your understanding

▶ Put	(1)	or	(x)	:
		•		•

- 1. Polar bear has a dark fur to blend in with the snow.
- 2. Brown bear lives in arctic region, while polar bear lives in forest.

### Complete the following statements:

- 1. Fennec fox has ...... colored fur to help it blend in with desert landscapes.
- 2. The type of adaptation that some animals use to hide from their predators or their preys is known as .....

In the Assessment Book: Try to answer: Self-Assessment (1)

# **Exercises on Lesson 1**

Understand

Apply

Higher Thinking Skills

1	Choose the correct answer:
-	1. The starred agama keeps cool during a hot sunny day in desert by
l	a. eating green vegetables. b. drinking more water.
	c. secreting more sweat. d. finding a shaded area.
	2. Adaptation helps the living organism in all the following characters, except
	a. surviving. b. reproduction.
	c. hiding. d. death. (Cairo 2022)
	3. Penguins live in a polar climate which
	a. is one of the hottest places on Earth.
	b. is one of the coldest places on Earth.
	c. looks like the rainy climate.
	d. looks like the forest climate.
	4. Which of the following ways help penguins to adapt to live in polar climate?
	a. Their bodies are covered with skin.
	b. Their bodies are covered with dense feathers only.
	c. Their bodies are covered with a thick layer of fat only.
	d. Their bodies are covered with dense feathers and a thick layer of fat.
	5. In penguin's feet,
	a. warm blood vessels weave around cold blood vessels.
	b. warm blood vessels weave around its toes.
	c. cold blood vessels weave around its toes.
	d. cold blood vessels weave around dense feathers.
	6. Penguin's feet have blood vessels that bring up from its feet towards its body.
١	a. cold water b. warm water c. cold blood d. warm blood
	(Alex. 2023)
	7. The presence of a thick white fur is an adaptation in
	a. starred agama lizard, b. polar bear,
	c. fennec fox. d. forest bear.
	8. Bears that live in forests have fur that of polar bears.
	a. whiter than b. darker than c. similar to d. brighter than

	and caracal have that he	
landscapes.		(South Sinai 2023
a. colorful s		white fur
		y-colored fur
10. Desert lizard desert.	ds have that make them	hide among the colorful rocks in the
a. tan-colore	ed fur b. color	red scales
c. sandy col	ored feathers d. dark	fur stass paiwalled ett atglesso (E.
11. Camouflage	means that the animal	
a. can be se	een easily among its surround	ing environment.
b. is hard to	be seen among its surrounding	ng environment.
c. is easily t	o be seen by its preys.	
d. can be se	een easily by its predators.	acosystem is a colin about the
12. Which of the	e following birds is more difficu	ult to be seen by its predator ?
a. A red bird	on a green tree. b. A blu	e bird on a green tree.
	on a green tree. b. A blu bird on a green tree. d. A gre	Promatical Contraction of the Contraction of
c. A yellow t	oird on a green tree. d. A gre	een bird on a green tree.
c. A yellow b	oird on a green tree. d. A green tree. d	hem in column (A):
c. A yellow be	oird on a green tree. d. A green tree. d. A green tree.	een bird on a green tree.
c. A yellow b	oird on a green tree. d. A green tree. d	hem in column (A):
c. A yellow to Choose from co	olird on a green tree. d. A green tree.	hem in column (A):  (C)  Helps it to
c. A yellow be Choose from co (A) Animal 1. Penguin	oird on a green tree. d. A green tree. d	hem in column (A):  (C)  Helps it to  A. stay warm and hide from preys
c. A yellow be Choose from control (A) Animal 1. Penguin 2. Caracal	olird on a green tree. d. A green tree.	hem in column (A):  (C) Helps it to  A. stay warm and hide from preys  B. keep its body warm
c. A yellow be Choose from control (A) Animal 1. Penguin 2. Caracal 3. Brown bear	olumns (B) and (C) what suit to (B)  Adaptation  a. has dark fur  b. has thick white fur  c. has thick layer of fat and dense feathers	hem in column (A):  (C) Helps it to  A. stay warm and hide from B. keep its body warm  C. blend in with desert lands D. hide among the trees whe
c. A yellow be Choose from control (A) Animal 1. Penguin 2. Caracal 3. Brown bear 4. Polar bear 1	oird on a green tree. d. A green tree. d	hem in column (A):  (C) Helps it to  A. stay warm and hide from preys B. keep its body warm  C. blend in with desert landscapes D. hide among the trees when it hunts  4
c. A yellow to Choose from control (A) Animal 1. Penguin 2. Caracal 3. Brown bear 4. Polar bear 1 Put (✓) or (X):	oird on a green tree. d. A green tree. d	hem in column (A):  (C) Helps it to  A. stay warm and hide from preys B. keep its body warm  C. blend in with desert landscapes D. hide among the trees when it hunts  4
c. A yellow be Choose from control (A) Animal 1. Penguin 2. Caracal 3. Brown bear 4. Polar bear 1  Put (✓) or (X): 1. The desert lize	oird on a green tree. d. A green tree. d	hem in column (A):  (C)  Helps it to  A. stay warm and hide from preys  B. keep its body warm  C. blend in with desert landscapes  D. hide among the trees when it hunts  4  4
c. A yellow to Choose from control (A) Animal 1. Penguin 2. Caracal 3. Brown bear 4. Polar bear 1  Put (✓) or (X): 1. The desert lize 2. Animals that	oird on a green tree. d. A green tree. d	hem in column (A):  (C)  Helps it to  A. stay warm and hide from preys  B. keep its body warm  C. blend in with desert landscapes  D. hide among the trees when it hunts  4  4
c. A yellow be Choose from co (A) Animal 1. Penguin 2. Caracal 3. Brown bear 4. Polar bear 1  Put (✓) or (X): 1. The desert lize 2. Animals that cool during here	oird on a green tree. d. A green tree. d	hem in column (A):  (C) Helps it to  A. stay warm and hide from preys B. keep its body warm  C. blend in with desert landscapes D. hide among the trees when it hunts  1
c. A yellow be Choose from co (A) Animal 1. Penguin 2. Caracal 3. Brown bear 4. Polar bear 1  Put (✓) or (X): 1. The desert lize 2. Animals that cool during he cool during he cool during he cool during organis	olid on a green tree. d. A green tree. d	hem in column (A):  (C)  Helps it to  A. stay warm and hide from preys  B. keep its body warm  C. blend in with desert landscapes  D. hide among the trees when it hunts  4  4

		Penguin's body is covered with dense feathers and a thin layer of fat to keep its body warm. (	)
		Thick white fur is an adaptation in bears that live in polar regions. (Suez 2023)(	ر ۱
Ĭ		The sandy-colored fur of caracal helps it blend in with snow in polar	,
Ĭ	0.	environment.	١
	7	Some types of lizards have colored feathers to help them blend in with	,
Ĭ	7.	rocks in their ecosystem.	١
		rocks in their ecosystem.	,
4	C	omplete the following sentences by using these words:	
1		(camouflage – habitat – adaptation – predator – prey)	
	1	The environment where living organisms live in is called	
Ĭ		An animal that hunts and eats another animal is called a while	
Ĭ	۷.	is an animal that is hunted and eaten by another animal.	
	3.	The characteristic that helps living organisms to survive and reproduce in the	
		ecosystem is known as	
-	4.	Type of adaptation that some animals use to hide from their predators or their	101
		preys is known as(Sharkia 202	2)
G	N E	rite the scientific term of each of the following :	_
Ī		A characteristic that helps living organisms to survive and reproduce in the	
Ĭ	1.	ecosystem in which they live.	)
	2	A bird that has a thick layer of fat and dense feathers to adapt	,
Ĭ	۷.	extreme cold weather.	)
	3	It covers the body of some types of bears to blend in with snow and	,
	Ο.	keeps their bodies warm. (Luxor 2023) (	)
	4	A type of foxes that has sandy-colored fur to adapt its desert	,
	aq	environment.	)
	5.	A property that helps animals to blend in with their surrounding	
		environment. (Cairo 2022) (	)
	Th	Paligning to the second se	
6	3 0	Complete the following sentences :	
•	1	. The penguin's body can keep warm through a thick layer of and	
	,	dense(Aswan 202	(3)
•	2	. A penguin can stand around on ice all day due to the weaving of around each other in its feet.	
	3	. Forest bears have or colored fur, while polar bears have	
		colored fur. (Cairo 202	
(	4	In desert environment, and are covered with sandy-colored fu	ır

	5. Among animals that can live in desert ecosystem are lizard and fox.	
•	6. The fur of a polar bear is thick to keep its body in polar climate, it has color to blend in with snow.	while
-	<ol> <li>The body of some types of lizards are covered with to blend in colored rocks in their environments.</li> </ol>	with
ļ	8. Among animals that can live in polar environment are and	
	<ol> <li>Animals can blend in with their surrounding environments to hide from the  and preys through property.</li> </ol>	əir ———
7	Give reasons for :	
	The starred agama lizard always looking for shade areas in desert.	
	2. The penguin's body has a thick layer of fat and dense feathers.	
	3. The blood vessels in the penguin's feet weave around each other.	
	4. Some desert lizards have colorful scales.	122 } 9
•	5. Fennec fox has sandy-colored fur, while polar bear has a white fur. (Min	ia 2023)
	6. Some animals have the ability to make camouflage adaptation.	
8	What happens if ?	
	The warm blood vessels and cold blood vessels in the penguin's feet do reserve around each other.	not
	2. The polar bear has thin fur instead of its thick fur.	

e-oteral	- relea si sa sas a ab	Cast Successor should be accessored to be because the
		able to make computage adaptation
Some ty	pes of lizards are not	able to make camouflage adaptation.

### Ompare between :

1

Points of comparison	Penguin	Fennec fox	
1. Habitat :			
2. Body is covered with :	b:::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::::	rt vp <del>wreiming is greini</del>	

2.

Points of comparison	Polar bear	Forest bear
1. Habitat :		
2. Fur is covered with :		falm

# Choose the animals that use camouflage adaptation to blend in with its environment:



a. Deer



b. Frog



c. Cow



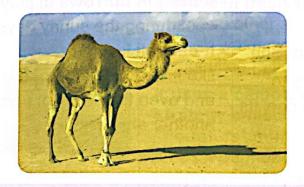
d. Lizard

### LESSON TWO [Part A]

### Activity 4

### **Types of Adaptations**

▶ Look at the following pictures, then put (√) or (x):



Camel's body is covered with a special thick hairy skin to adapt to live in desert.



Polar bear has thick white fur to adapt to live in forests.

In this lesson, we will study types of adaptations and explore these types in some animals.

### Types of adaptations

### 1. Structural adaptation

### 2. Behavioral adaptation

### Definition

It is a change in the body structure of a living organism to help it survive.

It is a change in the behaviors or acts of a living organism to help it survive.

### **Examples**

- · The blood vessels in the penguin's feet.
- The thick fur of the polar bear.
- Desert lizard looks for shade during hot sunny days.
- Migration of some animals towards certain regions.
- Now, we will study types of adaptations in some different animals.

special thick hairy skin

structural adaptation جلد سمیك مشعر

change خاص

behavioral adaptation تغير / تغيير migration تکیف ترکیبی

تكيف سلوكي

### 1 Fennec fox :

Habitat	Structural adaptation	Behavioral adaptation
Hot dry desert  Fennec fox	<ul> <li>It has a tan-colored coat (sandy-colored fur) that:</li> <li>provides camouflage to hide in a sandy, rocky environment.</li> <li>protects it from the hot Sun.</li> <li>It has extra-large ears to help it lose the heat to cool its body.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>It pants like dogs to cool its body, where it takes up to 700 breaths per minute.</li> <li>It lives in burrows to stay cool during the sunny days.</li> <li>It eats all kinds of food like insects, fruit, plant roots and even the remains from another animal's prey.</li> </ul>

### 2 Arctic fox :

Habitat	Structural adaptation	Behavioral adaptation
Tundra desert with temperature as cold as (50°C) below zero in the winter	- It has a thick fur coat to keep its body warm in extreme cold climate.	- It lives in burrows to stay warm at night.
months.	- Its fur coat is white during winter but turns brown in summer when the snow melts to help it sneak up on prey in any season.	- It eats all kinds of food like insects, fruit, plant roots and even the remains from another animal's prey.
Arctic fox in winter	- It has short ears and legs to help it stay warm.	
Arctic fox in summer	spin it sets of a living orga	of a living organism to t

### **Note**

The special shape of ears in both fennec and arctic foxes allow excellent hearing to help them hunt.

# Give reason for ...

Both fennec fox in hot dry desert and arctic fox in cold tundra eat all kinds of food. Because it is hard to find food in the hot dry desert and in the cold tundra.

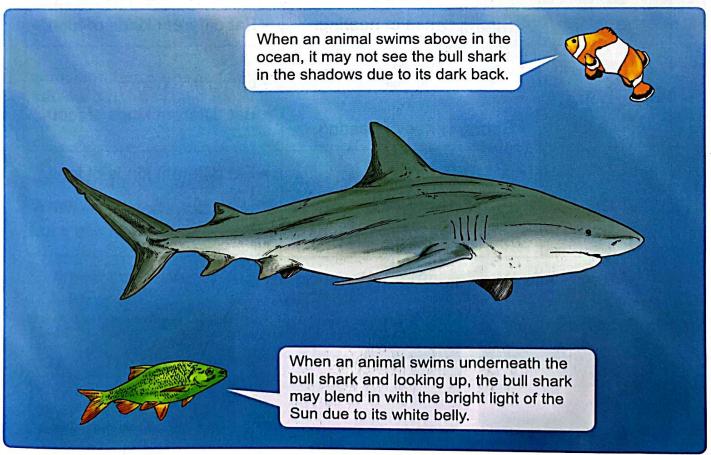
provide	burro يزود	ows	جحور	arctic fox	الثعلب القطبى
pant	rema يلهث	ins	بقايا	tundra desert	صحراء التندرا

### 3 Bull shark :

Most sharks can live only in salt water but in bull sharks, their bodies have adapted to live in both fresh water and salt water.

Habitat	Structural adaptation	Behavioral adaptation
Fresh water and salt water.	- Its body is adapted to survive in fresh water, where no other sharks live in fresh water, so it has less competition to find food.	<ul> <li>It eats different types of food as it lives in both fresh water and salt water.</li> <li>It hunts during the day and at night, so it can surprise its</li> </ul>
Bull shark	- It uses a camouflage strategy called "countershading", where it has a dark back and white belly to sneak up on prey.	prey.
	- It has sharp teeth to cut its prey's flesh.	Kritingto Struct

### Countershading in bull shark:



bull shark	قرش الثور	competition	
fresh water	میاه عدبه	sharp teeth	
salt water	مياه مالحة	countershading	

منافسة	belly
أسنان حادة	shadow
التباين اللونى	underneath

	-
٢	一团
١	一团
١	一口

### Check your understanding

-	11	ri	to	th	10	SC	ien	tif	ic	term	
	VV		LE	u	ı	36					

1. It is a change in the body structure of a living organism to help it	survive.	
	()	

<ol><li>It is a change in the behaviors or acts of a living organism to help</li></ol>	it survive.
the convinces and other shares live are personally sale and sale sales are	

### ▶ Use the following structural and behavioral adaptations of the following animals to complete the table below :

Hunts in day and night – Tan-colored coat – Panting – Sharp teeth – Short ears and legs – Big ears – Can live in fresh water – Camouflage by season – Countershading.

Animals	Structural adaptation	Behavioral adaptation
Fennec fox :	Strong sense of hearing.	Living in a burrow.     Eat different kinds of food.
Arctic fox :	Strong sense of hearing.	<ul><li>Living in a burrow.</li><li>Eat different kinds of food.</li></ul>
Bull shark :	•	Eat different kinds of food.

## Activity 5 The Panther Chameleon

- Lizards are from reptiles that are an ancient type of animals found all over the world in different environments.
- Bodies of reptiles are covered with scales such as starred agama lizard and panther chameleon.

### Adaptation of the panther chameleon to survive in its environment:

### · Habitat :

Tropical rainforest.

Structural adaptation :

Chameleon eyes can face opposite directions, where each eye can move independently from the other, so:

 One eye can search for food like insects, while the other eye looks out for danger in a different direction.

Chameleon has V-shaped feet and a tail like a hand to hold tightly the branches of trees.

Chameleon has brightly colored scales to help it make camouflage and hide between green leaves and colorful flowers.



### Behavioral adaptation :

- When chameleon finds itself in danger, it doesn't have teeth or claws for defense, but it can scare its enemies by some other tricks such as:
- It puffs up its body with air.



(2) It opens its mouth wide.



It changes the colors of its scales.



lizards reptiles panther chameleon independently

حرباء النمر بشكل مستقل

hold tightly السحالي last trick الزواحف

scare تمسك بإحكام puff up الحيلة الأخيرة tropical rainforest الغابات الاستوائية المطيرة claws

ينتفخ



The panther chameleon can hunt its prey and avoid becoming a prey at the same time.

Because it can search for food with one eye, while its other eye looks out for danger in a different direction.



### Check your understanding

▶ Complete the following table which describes the types of adaptations that help chameleon to survive [put (s) for structural and (B) for behavioral]:

Adaptation	Type of adaptation	This adaptation helps chameleon to
Bright colored scales.		Camouflage to hunt and hide.
V-shaped like feet.		Balance and move.
Eyes move in different directions.	BEELE PROPERTY OF THE PERSON NAMED IN COLUMN TO SERVICE AND ADMINISTRATION OF THE PERSON NAMED AND ADMINISTRATION OF THE PERSON NAMED AND ADMINISTRATION OF THE PERSON NAMED AND ADMINISTR	Hunt.
Puffing up its body.		Scare its enemies.
Changing colors.		Defend or survive.

# Exercises on Lesson 2 (Part A)

Understand O Apply Higher Thinking Skills 1 Choose the correct answer: 1. The color of fur of fennec fox protects it from ......... a. wind. b. rains. c. hot climate. d. cold weather. 2. Fennec fox has a tan-colored coat that provides ...... in its environment. a. camouflage b. respiration c. panting d. communication 3. Panting in fennec fox belongs to .......... adaptation. (Fayoum 2022) a. only structural b. only behavioral c. both structural and behavioral d. neither structural nor behavioral 4. Fennec fox and arctic fox live in burrows, this belongs to .......... adaptation. a. only structural b. only behavioral c. both structural and behavioral d. neither structural nor behavioral 5. All of the following properties help fennec fox to stay cool, except .......... a. thick fur coat. b. make panting. d. extra-large ears. c. tan-colored coat. 6. Changing the color of body coat of arctic fox according to season, is considered as a type of ..... (Beni-Suef 2023) b. changing the way of breathing. a. behavioral adaptation. d. changing the way of drinking. c. structural adaptation. 7. All of the following properties help arctic fox to stay warm, except ...... b. short ears. a. thick fur coat. d. short legs. (Qena 2022) c. tan-colored coat. 8. Both fennec fox and arctic fox are similar in all of the following, except .......... a. they live in the same habitat. b. they can eat different things. c. they have excellent hearing ability.

- 9. All of the following sentences represent the meaning of adaptation, except ......
  - a. it is the characteristic that helps living things survive.

d. they have different sized ears.

- b. it is the characteristic that helps living things reproduce.
- c. it is the change that helps the animal to find a prey.
- d. it is the change that causes the death of the animal.

10. Bull sharks can live in	(Giza 2023)
a. fresh water only.	b. salt water only.
c. seas, rivers and mud.	d. rivers, seas and oceans.
11. One of structural adaptations of b	ull sharks is that they
a. can live in both salt water and f	
b. are flexible about what they ear	t. g
c. hunt in the day as well as the n	night.
d. can live in salt water only.	
12. When a panther chameleon stand scales changes into color.	ds within leaves of trees, the color of its
a. white	b. green
c. blue	d. black
<ol><li>Special eyes of the panther chama. only structural</li></ol>	b. only behavioral
c. both structural and behavioral	d. neither structural nor behavioral
14is considered as a behavio	ral adaptation in the panther chameleon.
<ul> <li>a. Puffing up its body during dang</li> </ul>	ger (Giza 2023)
b. Each eye can move independe	ently
c. V-shaped feet	
d. Tail like a hand	
15. All the following are structural ad except	aptations in the panther chameleon,
a. each eye can move independe	ently.
b. openning its mouth wide during	g danger.
c. its V-shaped feet.	
d. its tail like a hand.	a thick fur coat. b. st

### Choose from columns (B) and (C) what suit them in column (A):

Adaptation	Helps it to
a. short ears and legs	A. stay cool
b. V-shaped feet	B. stay warm
c. different body colors	C. balance and move
d. panting	D. hide from its prey
	b. V-shaped feet c. different body colors

3	Put (	V	or	X	:
	I ut		, 01		

1.	. Living organisms can adapt their environmental conditions thro	ugh	
	structural adaptation and behavioral adaptation. (Me	enofia 2022) (	)
2	. The behavioral adaptation is a change in the body structure of	a living	
	organism to survive. (Dan	nietta 2023) (	)
3	. When the snow melts in polar regions, the thick fur coat of arcti	c fox	
	turns black.	5) A type of	)
4	. The ears of arctic fox are larger than those of fennec fox. (S	ohag 2023) (	)
5	. Fennec fox stays in burrows during day, while arctic fox stays ir	Li brissil A. a	
	burrows at night.	) in its ony	)
6	. Both fennec and arctic foxes can eat insects, fruit, plant roots a	nd	
	the remains from other animal's prey.	(	)
7	. Fennec fox has sandy-colored fur to help it make camouflage.	(	)
8	. Arctic fox lives in tundra, while fennec fox lives in hot desert.		)
9.	. Panting and staying in burrows are considered behavioral adap	tations	
	in fennec fox.	Omplete t	)
10.	. All types of sharks live in fresh water. (North	Sinai 2023) (	)
11.	. If a bull shark moves from a river to a sea, it will die.	BUNDON (	)
12.	. Bull shark uses countershading camouflage to sneak up on its	orey. (	)
13.	. Chameleon uses its tail and V-shaped feet to hunt and move.	(	)
14.	. The panther chameleon has teeth and claws, through which it c	an hunt	

### Complete the following table:

the other one to look out for danger.

and eat its prey.

Animal	Its adaptation	Structural or Behavioral adaptation
1	Has blood vessels weave around each other.	burrows to be warm is
2. Polar bear	Has thick white fur.	Structural
3 fox	Changes the color of its fur.	Y. The for culor or arctic f
<b>4.</b> fox	Hiding inside burrows to stay cool.	8. Thu chember bull sha
5. Panther chameleon	Has eyes face opposite directions.	s demandary strate

15. Starred agama lizard use one of its eyes to search for food and

Ŀ	Write the scientific term of each of the following:	
	1. A change in the body structure of a living organism to survive.	()
	2. A change in the behaviors or acts of a living organism to survive.	()
	3. A type of foxes has a tan-colored fur. (Behiera 2023)	) ()
	4. A way by which fennec fox cools itself like dogs.	()
	5. A type of foxes that changes its fur color between winter and	
	summer seasons.	()
	6. A lizard that has different bright colored scales to provide camouflag	
	in its environment and has V-shaped feet.	()
	7. A shape of feet by which a panther chameleon holds tightly to brance	
	of trees.	()
	8. A feature in the bull shark, in which the upper surface of its body is darker than its lower surface.	()
6	Complete the following sentences :	
	1. Weaving of blood vessels around each other in penguin's feet is comment.	considered
	) adaptation. Jour of 1991 begants V both list all asau moster	
	Z. Tan-colored coat in fennec fox is considered adaptation, panting to stay cool is considered adaptation.	while its (Cairo 2023)
	3. Among animals that live in hot environments are foxes, while foxes live in cold environments.	
	Extra-large ears allow heat to escape to cool the bodies of  while short ears and legs help the foxes stay warm.	foxes,
	5. Short ears of arctic fox is considered adaptation, while its	s staving in
	burrows to be warm is considered adaptation.	(Qena 2023)
	6. A burrow is an excellent place for the fox to stay warm at	
	for the fox to stay cool during the day.	2. Polar
	7. The fur color of arctic fox is in winter but turnsi	in summer.
	8. The chance of bull shark to find a prey is more easier in	water than
	in water.	
	9. Countershading strategy of the bull shark is considered	adaptation.
	10. Eyes of chameleon move independently of each other, this is cons as adaptation.	sidered (Behira 2022)

<ul> <li>11. Chameleon puffs up its body with air for defense which is adaptation, while its V-shaped feet is considered</li> </ul>	
ern is exposed to danger.	(Giza 2023 / Cairo 2023)
Give reasons for :	
1. Fennec fox has a tan-colored coat.	
1 company to the comp	t Panquis - F -
2. Fennec fox undergoes panting.	
. n - Polar bear – Fennec fox – Arcüc fox. (	Tomano reniner C
3. Arctic fox has a thick fur coat.	
4. The fur of arctic fox is white during winter but it turns brow	n in summer.
5. Burrows are excellent places for arctic and fennec foxes.	
	3. Shape of ears
6. Fennec fox has extra-large ears, while arctic fox has short	
7. Bull sharks have less competition for finding food in fresh	water.
8. Panther chameleon has V-shaped feet and a long tail.	(Assiut 2023)
What happens if ?	5. V-snaped feet of
Arctic fox has a brown coat during winter but it turns white	e during summer.
2. Fennec fox has short ears.	L. Fenger lox
3. Sense of hearing becomes weak in foxes.	2. Starred coerna to
4. Arctic fox has only a white coat during all seasons of the	/ear.

6. Panther chameleon is exposed	I to danger.	Burive 1
		trol andiger Avril
Cross out the odd word:		
1. Penguin – Polar bear – Fenned		(Sohag 2023) (
2. Fennec fox – Starred agama liza	rd – Panther chameleon -	
<ol><li>Panther chameleon – Polar bea</li></ol>	ar – Fennec fox – Arctic f	ox. (
Compare between :	me no umo le disebitui de	a Arctickovskás S. Int.
Points of comparison	Fennec fox	Arctic fox
1. Habitat :		
2. Color of fur :	ont piaces for arella and	5 Burrows are excel
3. Shape of ears :		
4. Time of hiding in burrows :	vas olidus ausa agast arī	A Fedinar fox becay
Put (S) in front of structural adap	otation and (B) in front o	f behavioral adaptat
for each of the following statem	onte :	7. Bull sharks have a
1. Tan-colored coat of fennec fox.		(
2. Living of the arctic fox in burrow	vs.	(
3. Living of bull shark in both salt	water and fresh water.	Warm (
4. Countershading of bull shark.	icerca atamu	lion, while its (a
5. V-shaped feet of panther cham	eleon.	Ti zaoaa (
6. Change the colors of panther c	hameleon scales in dang	ger cases. (
Give only one example of behavio	ral adaptation in each of	the following animals
1. Fennec fox :	in what catabation	reach connactor
a first distribution of the control		
2. Starred agama lizard :		***************************************

## **B** Look at the following figures, then answer the questions:



Figure (1)



Figure (2)

# LESSON TWO [Part B]

## Activity 6

## Plant Adaptations

- ▶ Look at the opposite picture, then put (√) or (x):
  - 1. Palm tree is adapted to grow and survive in rainforest habitat.
  - 2. Plants have adaptations like animals to be able to survive in different environments.



Palm tree

- Plants can grow in every place that sunlight shines, even the bottom of sea ice in polar regions has tiny plants growing on it.
- Like animals, plants have structural and behavioral adaptations that help them survive and grow in their different environments.
- Now, we will study two different big trees that grow in two different environments which are Savannah and Amazon rainforest.

#### Savannah

#### Such as Southern African Savannah.

- It is a grassland habitat with a mild temperature.
- It is characterized by extreme lack of water during the dry season.
- Acacia tree is a big tree that grows in Savannah.
- Most large plants cannot grow in this habitat due to drought conditions, as the dry season lasts half of the year.



savannah Amazon rainforest kapok tree grassland

السافانا lack of water غابات الأمازون المطيرة شجرة الكابوك المراعي

drought conditions acacia tree

#### **Amazon rainforest**

#### Such as Amazon rainforest of Brazil.

- It is rainy most of the year, so it is easy to find water.
- It is characterized by strong winds.
- Kapok tree is a big tree that grows in Amazon rainforest.
- It is hard for some plants in this habitat to reach sunlight due to the extra tall trees growing up to 70 meters tall.



ظروف الجفاف strong winds نقص المياه mild temperature شجرة السنط scatter

رياح شديدة درجة حرارة معتدلة

# Adaptation of the two different big trees to survive in their different environments:

- 1 Acacia tree (umbrella-shaped tree)
- Acacia is adapted to survive through many months of drought in its environment as follows:
- · Habitat:

Southern African Savannah.

· Structural adaptation:

#### Leaves

- Tiny leaves grow on the top of the tree to help them hold in water, while soaking up (absorbing) sunlight needed to make food.
- There are sharp spines around the leaves to prevent animals from eating these leaves.

#### Trunk

 A very long trunk, so most animals except giraffe cannot reach its leaves to feed on.



Acacia tree



Leaves of Acacia tree

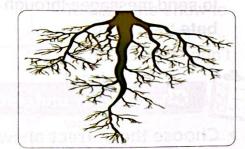
#### **Note**

The trunk in acacia tree stores water as the hump in the camel stores fat.

#### Root

- A very long root called taproot that grows directly downward to search for water as deep as 35 meters below the soil surface.
- · Behavioral adaptation :

#### Acacia tree can defend itself as follows:



Taproo

- It **produces** a **poison** when an animal begins eating its leaves to make the leaves taste very bad to keep this animal away.
- It sends a smelly message in the wind to warn other acacia trees nearby telling them to start making the same poison.

hump
taproot
poison

سنام
جذر رئيسي
سم

## Kapok tree (umbrella-shaped tree)

- Kapok is adapted to survive in its environment through structural and behavioral adaptations as follows:
- · Habitat: Amazon rainforest of Brazil.
- Structural adaptation :

#### Leaves

Hand-shaped leaves with narrow parts to allow wind to move more gently through the leaves without tearing them.

#### Roots

- Large, wide roots called buttress roots.
- Buttress roots are not planted deeply in the ground but they grow high up on its trunk to hold the tree firmly in the soggy soil (wet muddy soil).



Buttress roots can start up to 5 meters above the ground.

#### Seeds

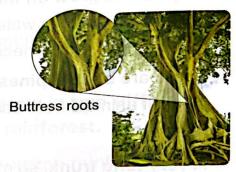
- Kapok tree has fluffy yellow seeds to be easily carried by wind across the forest.
- Behavioral adaptation :
  - Kapok tree has delicious-smelling flowers to send messages through wind to attract bats towards it.



Kapok tree



Kapok leaves



Kapok tree



Kapok flowers and seeds



### Check your understanding

#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. Sending a smelly message from acacia tree to warn other acacia trees is considered ..... adaptation.
  - a. only structural
- b. only behavioral
- c. both structural and behavioral
- d. neither structural nor behavioral
- 2. A structural adaptation of kapok tree is that
  - a. it has delicious-smelling flowers.
- b. it has buttress roots.
- c. it has sharp spines around its leaves.
- d. it has a long taproot.

## Activity 7 Plant Scientist

- The scientist who studies plants is known as "botanist".
- Plants have different properties that help them to adapt and survive in their different environments through their structural adaptations as we will study in the following examples:

Plant	Habitat	Structural adaptation	Reason
Mangrove tree	Salt water	It has long and strong roots.	To resist the water waves.
Water lily	Wetland (Fresh water)		To absorb a large amount of sunlight.
	bolored	The pine tree has :	Part (4) or (x) restor
Pine tree	Snow and the same	- a triangular shape and short branches needle leaves.	<ul> <li>To allow the snow to slide easily over it, so its branches don't break.</li> <li>To prevent the loss of water.</li> </ul>
	Desert	- It has thick roots and small leaves.	To resist the strong winds.
Palm tree	d habitat	b. It is reiny mos	

wetland
palm tree
needle leaves



Barbary fig

Desert

It has sharp spines and tough outer cover.

**(**)

To prevent animals from eating its leaves and fruits.

## ▶ From the previous table, we can conclude that :

- All plants have roots, stems (trunks) and leaves.
- Plants differ in the structure and shape of their roots, stems and leaves to adapt the environmental conditions to survive and grow in their environments.

# What happens if ...?

#### Plants were placed in different environment.

These plants may die or may adapt the new environmental conditions to survive and grow in their new environments.

# | No. | No.

## Check your understanding

#### ▶ Put (√) or (x):

1. Palm tree has short roots and big leaves.

2. Water lily plant lives in salt water. (

3. Mangrove tree has long and strong roots to help the plant to resist the water waves.

In the Assessment Book:
Try to answer:
Self-Assessment 2

# Exercises on Lesson 2 (Part B)

Understand	O Apply	<ul> <li>Higher Thinking Skill</li> </ul>	is
1 Choose the correct answ	er: Agaph bulach		
1. It is difficult for rainfore	st plants to get		
a. water.	b. air		
c. sunlight.	d. ox	ygen.	
2. One of the behavioral a	adaptations of aca	cia tree is that	(Alex. 2023)
a. it has one very long	root.		
b. it has sharp spines a	round its leaves.		
c. it has very tall trunk.			
d. it produces a poison	to make bad tasty	y leaves.	
3. Acacia tree trunk and c	amel hump,	mi grows in a rainforest, w	
a. both store water.			
b. both store fat.			
c. the first stores fat an	d the second store	es water.	
d. the first stores water	and the second s	tores fat.	
<ul> <li>4. All of the following prop</li> </ul>	Annual Control of the	cia leaves from being eate	
animals, except that	ALCOHOLOGICAL STREET, MICHAEL STREET,	de leaves	(Minia 2022)
a. they are high enough	REAL RESIDENCE AND ASS.	ey are surrounded by shar	
c. they are brightly colo		ey produce a poison.	
5. The acacia tree warns			
by sending		vatery message in the wa	
<ul><li>a. a watery message in</li><li>c. a smelly message in</li></ul>		smelly message in the wa	
6 . When the nearby acad			
The state of the s		nals, they start to	
a. lose water from their		mearra sa	
b. invite bats to eat the			
c. make a poisonous si	ubstance in their le		
d. fall down their leaves	Sales viji restawa to s		
7. Savannah is characteri	ized by all of the fo	ollowing, except	
a. it is a grassland hab		s rainy most of the year.	
c. it has a mild tempera	ature. d. it h	as extreme lack of water.	

	8.	From umbrella-shaped trees are .	(Cair	o 2023)
			b. mangrove tree and kapok tree.	
		c. acacia tree and kapok tree.		
	9.	The roots of kapok tree are not pla	anted deeply in the soil, because	
		a. the soil contains less water.	b. the soil contains more water.	
		c. the climate is very cold.	d. the climate is very hot.	
	10.	Kapok tree uses the wind to carry	its fluffy yellow seeds across its	
		a. desert habitat.	b. snowy habitat.	
		c. salt water habitat.	d. rainforest habitat.	
)	11.	If a plant grows in a dry desert, it is	needs to adapt for getting water.	
		a. long branches	b. long leaves	
		c. long roots	d. more sunlight	
)	12.	If a plant grows in a rainforest, who to adapt for getting more su	ere it is hard to reach sunlight, so it ned inlight.	eds
		a. small roots	b. a very tall trunk	
		c. sharp spines	d. a very short trunk	
)	13.	If a plant grows in a snow habitat, characteristics, except to ac	homeone and been entire among the Board and	
		a. short branches	b. triangular shape	
		c. needle leaves	d. wide leaves	
1000	14.	All of the following are adaptation from them, except that they	s of different plants to keep animals aw	ay
		a. produce poison.		
		b. gather their branches high above	ve. golbnez yd	
		c. have delicious-smelling flowers		
		d. have sharp spines.		
•	15.	Desert plants are characterized b	y all of the following, except that they	. 0. *
		a. store water.	b. have wide leaves.	
		c. have long roots.	d. have sharp spines.	
6	16.	Palm tree has tiny leaves like		
		a. pine tree.	b. kapok tree.	
		c. acacia tree.	d. water lily plant.	
	17.		of water lily plant is that (Giza 2022	/2023)
		a. it has long roots.	b. it has sharp spines.	
		c. it has tiny leaves.	d. it has wide leaves.	

a. resist the strong wind c. prevent the loss of w	d. b. resist the water waves.  ater. d. absorb the underground water.  ar shape to make snow slides over its branches
# ACC   1   1   1   1   1   1   1   1   1	s structural adaptation makes this tree face the extreme
a. caracal.	b. penguin.
c. fennec fox.	d. brown bear.
20. Barbary fig keeps anim	als away like acacia trees by its
a. sharp spines.	b. poison.
c. smell.	d. long leaves.
(A)	s Plants of dry desert has planes to absorb a larg
<ol> <li>Long and strong roots</li> <li>Wide leaves</li> <li>Needle shaped leaves</li> <li>Sharp spines</li> <li>Hand-shaped leaves</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>a. prevent animals from eating barbary fig.</li> <li>b. make mangrove tree resists the water waves.</li> <li>c. carries the kapok tree's fluffy yellow seeds across the forest.</li> <li>d. allow wind to move more gently through the leaves of kapok tree.</li> <li>e. allow water lilies absorb large amount of sunlight.</li> <li>f. prevent the loss of water in pine tree.</li> </ul>
1 2	4. A tree that grows in Amazon rainiorest or suzzir
Put (✓) or (X) :	
	daptation only to help them survive and grow
in different environments	1 Pre part of the kapak trac which is connected by a
	hs in Southern African Savannah.
	ee grows deeply downward searching for water. (
<ol><li>Acacia leaves are protect brightly colored leaves.</li></ol>	cted from being eaten by animals as they have
5. Acacia tree and kapok to	ree use wind to send messages. (
	s-smelling flowers to attract bats towards it. (

7. Hand-shaped leaves of kapok tree is considered as a behavioral

adaptation.

(Minia 2023) (

Complete the following sentences :
Acacia tree defends itself by producing that makes leaves taste terrible, while chameleon defends itself by puffing up its with air.
2. Kapok tree grows in Amazon rainforest habitat which has soil.
3. The hand-shaped leaves of kapok tree allow to flow through them gently.  (Gharbia 2023)
4. The kapok tree spreads the smell of its flowers to attract towards it.
5. Among the plants that can survive in habitats that have lackage of water are, and
6. The leaves of tree in hot weather habitat store water, while the needle leaves of tree in snowy habitat prevent the loss of water.
7. The leaves of water lilies are wide in order to on the water surface and to absorb a large amount of (Ismailia 2022)
8. Drought regions are characterized by lacking of so, their plants adapt by having very long
9. The structural adaptation of tree can resist water waves, while the structural adaptation of tree can resist strong winds.
10. The leaves of plant allow it to absorb a large amount of sunlight, while the leaves of tree allow wind to move easily through these leaves without tearing them.
Give reasons for:
1. Branches of acacia tree gather on the top of its trunk.
. 5. Some plants of minforces babilat became your short
2. Acacia tree has sharp spines around its leaves.
3. Wind is important to acacia tree.
4. Kapok tree has hand-shaped leaves.
5. Kapok trees stay firmly rooted in the soggy soil although they are very tall.

6. Pine tree has a triangular shape and short branches.	
7. Water lilies have wide floating leaves.	(Sharkia 2022)
8. Mangrove tree has long and strong roots.	(Cairo 2023)
Palm trees have thick roots and small leaves.	kaporonii di e. edigaceaA di e
10. Barbary fig has sharp spines.	(Sharkia 2023)
What happens if ?	erement in it
The length of acacia taproot doesn't exceed 3 meters downward	R. Drought A
2. The acacia leaves are not guarded by sharp spines.	logita coT .01 * 1
3. There are no buttress roots in the kapok tree.	910. The leave
4. The pine tree has an umbrella shape not a triangle shape.	el Modiliw
5. Some plants of rainforest habitat became very short.	
6. Water lily has narrow leaves instead of wide leaves.	* 2. Acadia un
7. Palm tree has thin roots and large leaves.	welbniv (* . )
Cross out the odd word :	A. Kapok Mo
1. Taproot – Tiny leaves – Buttress roots – Producing a poison.	(
2. Taproot – Hand-shaped leaves – Soggy soil – Buttress roots.	()
3. Cactus plant – Barbary fig – Palm tree – Mangrove tree.	194 ) <b>(</b>
4 Acadia tree Polar boar - Penguin - Pine tree	1

-		
	Compare hotwood	m .
	Compare between	:11.

1.

Points of comparison	Acacia tree	Kapok tree	
1. Type of roots :	gures, <u>than comulate</u>	Look at the following E	
2. Shape of leaves :	Blomach	Perin	

2.

Points of comparison	Kapok tree	Water lily plant	Pine tree
1. Habitat :			
2. Shape of leaves :			

Classify the following living organisms according to their habitats into organisms live in deserts and organisms live in forests in the table below:

(Starred agama lizard – Panther chameleon – Fennec fox – Kapok tree – Palm tree – Barbary fig plant)

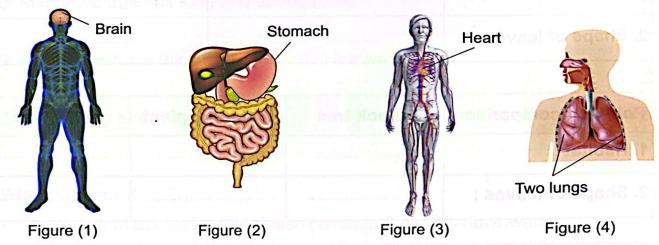
Organisms live in deserts	Organisms live in forests
Thervous system and closer r	digestive system, respiratory system
	stem :
to reform a specific jab (function).	is a group of organs that work trgs-the

## LESSON THREE

## Activity 8

## **Digestive System**

▶ Look at the following figures, then complete the sentences below:



- 1. Figure \_\_\_\_\_ represents the human digestive system.
- 2. Figure ..... represents the human respiratory system.

## How do body systems adapt to meet the needs of living organisms?

- Each living organism has different ways to adapt to live in its environment, so:
  - The body of a living organism (human or animal) is made up of systems such as digestive system, respiratory system, nervous system, .... etc.

#### System:

It is a group of organs that work together to perform a specific job (function).



#### Note

Digestive system and respiratory system are working together to get energy from food and breathing.

- In this lesson, we will study :
  - Human digestive system.
- Human respiratory system.
- Why do we need to eat food? "Because food contains different nutrients (Vitamins, proteins, .. etc.) that give us energy to:
  - do activities as walking, talking and even during sleeping.
  - do body function as heart beating, breathing and thinking.

brain	
stomach	
heart	
nutrients	
heart beati	n

organs العناصر الغذائية نبض القلب

two lungs المخ specific job المعدة digestive system

breathing وظيفة محددة

energy الرئتين nervous system الجهاز الهضمي respiratory system الجهاز العصبي الجهاز التنفسي

#### Note

In one day, your body needs a lot of energy, so:

- your heart beats around 100,000 times.

- you breathe over 20,000 times.

#### **Human digestive system:**

 The digestive system breaks down food into smaller parts that your body can use in a process called digestion process.

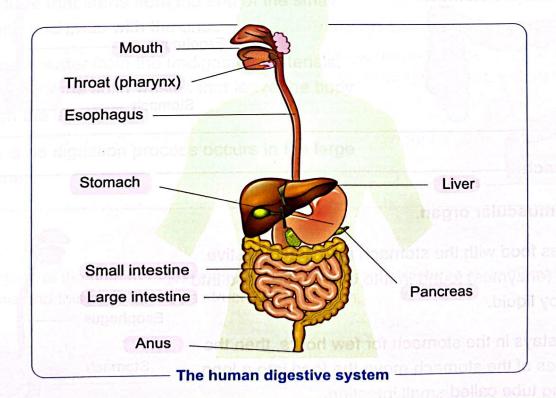
#### Digestion process:

It is a process of breaking down food into smaller parts that the body cells absorb and use them to get energy and grow.

#### The structure of the human digestive system:

The human digestive system consists of a group of organs that work together which are:

Small Large Throat **Esophagus** Stomach Mouth intestine intestine (pharynx)



Digestive system starts with mouth and ends with anus.

mouth عملية الهضم digestion process esophagus small intestine وظائف الجسم

throat (pharynx)

البلعوم الأمعاء الدقيقة

liver pancreas البنكرياس

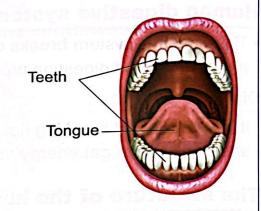
large intestine anus

الأمعاء الغليظة فتحة الشرج

## Description and function of organs of human digestive system:

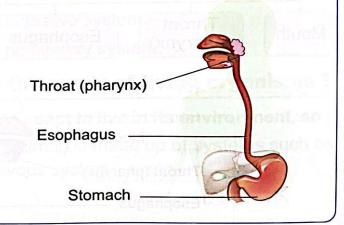
#### Mouth

- Digestion process begins in the mouth.
- Mouth contains:
  - Teeth: They crush food during chewing
  - Saliva: It is a liquid substance in the mouth.
    - It moistens food and begins to break it down.
  - Tongue: It mixes food with saliva in the mouth.



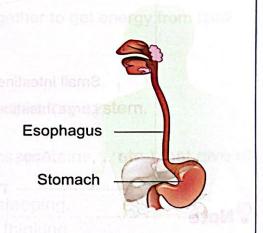
#### **Esophagus**

- · It is a long muscular tube.
- It allows the food to move from throat down into the stomach.



#### Stomach

- It is a muscular organ.
- It mixes food with the stomach acid and digestive juices (enzymes) found in it to change the food into a soupy liquid.
- Food stays in the stomach for few hours, then the muscles of the stomach move the food into a long, winding tube called small intestine.



description saliva long muscular tube muscular organ

وصف اللعاب أنبوب عضلي طويل

stomach acid enzymes function substance عضو عضلي

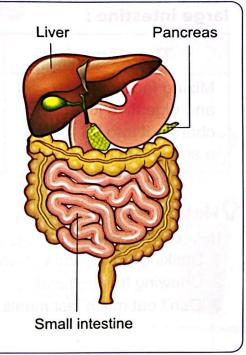
حمض المعدة moisten مادة

crush chew digestive juices وظيفة

عصارات هضمية

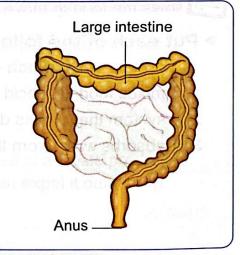
#### **Small intestine**

- It is a long, winding tube as its length is more than six meters.
- The juices of pancreas and liver flow into the small intestine and help in breaking down the food into nutrients (or digested food).
  - The walls of the small intestine absorb these nutrients through tiny blood vessels to carry them to all body parts.
- The body does not benefit from some parts of food known as undigested materials that flow into the large intestine.



#### Large intestine

- It is a tube that starts from the end of the small intestine and ends with the anus.
- It absorbs water from the undigested materials, so they become solid wastes that leave the body through the anus.
- There is no digestion process occurs in the large intestine.





The organs of the human digestive system have different structures to do different functions and this considered as structural adaptation.

# What happens if ... ?

One of the organs of the digestive system is absent.

The digestive system could not do its function correctly.

benefit

منفعة

undigested materials solid wastes تدفق

مواد غير مهضومة الفضلات الصلبة

properties

خصائص

► Comparison between the functions of the stomach, small intestine and large intestine :

The stomach	The small intestine	The large intestine
Mixing food with the acid and digestive juices to change it into a soupy liquid.	Breaking down of food into nutrients by the help of the juices of liver and pancreas.	Absorbing the water from undigested materials.

### **₽** Note

How can you keep the digestive system healthy?

- 1. Drinking a lot amount of water.
- 2. Chewing the food well.
- 3. Don't eat much fast meals.



## Check your understanding

▶ Put each of the following words in front of its suitable sentence :

( Stomach - Large intestine - Digestive system)

- 1. It mixes food with acid and digestive juices.
- 3. It absorbs water from the undigested materials.

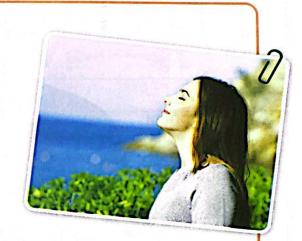


The body does not benefit from some pans

**Activity** 9 Respiratory System

#### **Human respiratory system:**

- Our bodies need oxygen in order to do their functions.
- We get oxygen gas from the air around us all the time.
- The respiratory system is the system responsible for breathing (respiration).
- The respiratory system supplies the body with oxygen gas and gets rid of carbon dioxide gas through the respiration process.



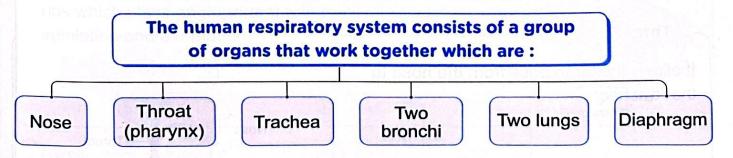
#### **Respiration process:**

It is a process of pulling air in (inhalation) and pushing air out (exhalation) of the body.

#### Note

Carbon dioxide gas produced during respiration process is a waste product. carbon dioxide gas is harmful to our bodies so, we must expel it out during exhalation.

#### The structure of the human respiratory system:



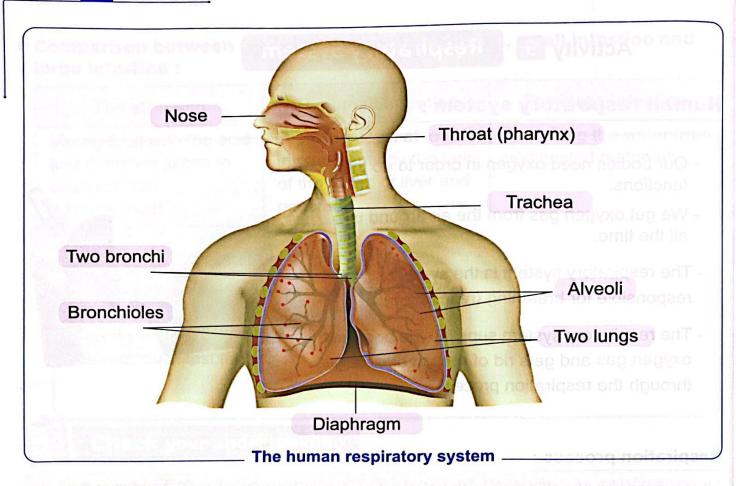
exhalation harmful nose

trachea inhalation get rid of

expel out القصبة الهوائية يتخلص من

two bronchi شهيق diaphragm

الشعبتان الهوائيتان الحجاب الحاجز



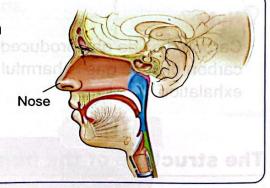
## How does the respiratory system work?

#### Nose:

It is the first organ of the respiratory system through which the air enters the body.

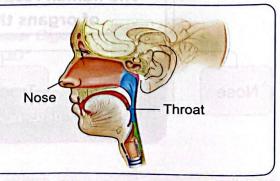


The air can enter the body through the nose and the mouth.



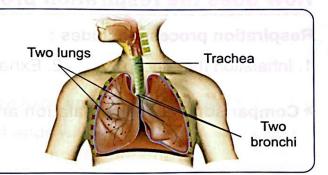
#### Throat:

It allows the air to pass from the nose to the "trachea"



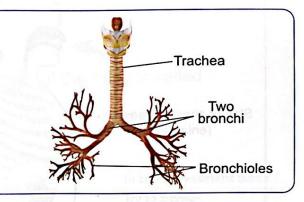
#### Trachea:

- It is a tube that allows air to pass into the "two lungs" which fill up with air like two balloons.
- Inside the lungs, the trachea is branched into two tubes known as "two bronchi"



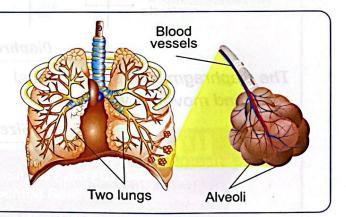
#### Two bronchi:

- They allow the air to enter the two lungs.
- They are divided into smaller and smaller tubes that look like the branches of a tree known as "bronchioles".



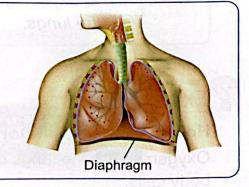
#### Two lungs:

- Inside the lungs, the bronchioles end with little air sacs, surrounded by blood vessels known as "alveoli".
- Inside the blood vessels, oxygen moves into the blood which carries oxygen around the body to help other organs and systems to work.



#### Diaphragm:

- It is a large muscle at the base of ribs which plays an important role in inhalation and exhalation.



The organs of the human respiratory system have different structures to do different functions and this is considered as structural adaptation.

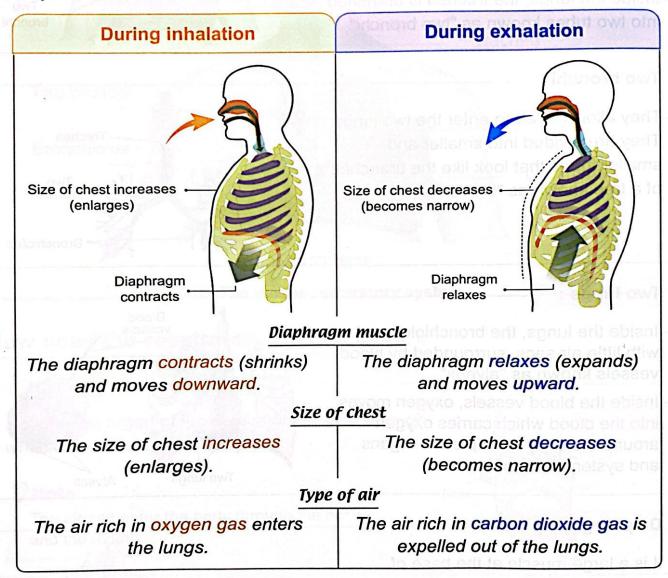
fill up

look like تملأ

## How does the respiration process take place?

#### Respiration process includes:

- 1. Inhalation (breathe in).
- 2. Exhalation (breathe out).
- Comparison between inhalation and exhalation :



# **Explain**

How does the respiratory system get oxygen to the body cells?

Oxygen enters the lungs during inhalation, then the blood carries oxygen to all the body cells.

chest	صدر	contract (shrink)	يتقلص
expand	يتمدد	relax	يسترخى



## Check your understanding

- ▶ Put (✔) or (★):
  - 1. During inhalation, the diaphragm muscle relaxes and moves downward. (
  - 2. Respiration process starts with mouth and ends with anus.
- ▶ Complete :

  - 2. The process of pulling air in and pushing air out of the body is called ...... process.

In the Assessment Book: Try to answer: Self-Assessment (3)



inhalation

pulling air in

pushing air out سحب الهواء إلى الداخل

دفع الهواء للخارج

# **Exercises on Lesson 3**

_		1			
•	Ur	nde	ers	ta	nd

O Apply

Higher Thinking Skills

1	Choose the correct answer:
T	100 Sept. 100 Sept. 1 100 Sept
Ĭ	The energy that the living organism needs to perform different functions is obtained from
	a. breathing only.
	b. food processing only.
	c. breathing and running.
	d. breathing and food processing.
•	2. All of the following are organs of the digestive system, except
	a. mouth. b. nose. c. stomach. d. esophagus.
-	3. Digestion process begins in the (Giza 2023)
	a. stomach. b. esophagus. c. mouth. d. small intestine.
•	4. Which of the following organs does not share in breaking down of food?
	a. Mouth. b. Stomach. c. Lungs. d. Small intestine.
	5. Crushing the food in your mouth is the function of (Behira 2022)
	a. stomach. b. tongue. c. saliva. d. teeth.
•	6. All of the following are correct about the mouth, except
	a. it is the first organ in the digestive system.
	b. it has teeth. c. it has tongue.
	d. it moves directly food to the stomach.
	7. Saliva in the mouth makes the food become soft and mushy with the help of
	a. teeth only.  b. tongue only.
	c. teeth and esophagus. d. teeth and tongue.
-	8. The throat is connected to the stomach through
	a. esophagus. b. trachea. c. small intestine. d. large intestine.
•	9. The organ that moves the food into the stomach is (Alex. 2023)
	a. mouth. b. tongue. c. esophagus. d. small intestine.
	10. The food passes from the stomach to the directly.
	a. esophagus b. small intestine c. large intestine d. anus
	11. The stomach mixes the food with to help in digestion of food.
	a. digestive juices only b. stomach acid only
	c. saliva and digestive juices d. stomach acid and digestive juices

12.	. The liver and	pour their juic	ces into the small in	ntestine.	
	a. throat	b. esophagus	c. large intestine	d. pancreas	
13.	. The long windir	ng tube that its leng	th is about more th	an six meters is	called
	a. large intestir	ne.	b. small intestine	The tube langua	
	c. esophagus.		d. stomach.		
14.	The undigestee	d food pass from t	he small intestine i	nto the	(Suez 2022)
	a. liver.	b. pancreas.	c. brain.	d. large intest	ine.
15.	In the large into	estine, is abs	sorbed from the un	digested food.	
	a. starch	b. fat	c. water	d. oil	
16.		es of undigested for m outside through	ood become usele	ss to the body,	so the body
	a. mouth.		b. anus.		
	c. large intestir	ne. Svom lant sou	d. small intestine		
17.	All organs of th	e human digestive	e system are consi	dered as	adaptation.
	a. only structur	al	b. only behaviora	d	
	c. structural an	d behavioral	d. neither structu	ral nor behavio	ral
18.	During inhalati	on, air enters thro	ugh then dow	n the throat.	
	a. nose and tra	ichea	b. nose and mou	th (A)	
	c. mouth and lu	ıngs	d. mouth and trad	chea	
19.	The passage of	of air during inhalat	tion is		(Cairo 2023)
	a. throat - nose	e – lungs – trache	apolica salkere d		
	b. trachea -thre	oat –lungs – nose.	kd pepununsam		
	c. lungs – nose	– throat – trachea	c. carnes oxygen		
	d. nose - throa	t – trachea – lung	e. air saiors mo.8		
20.	The throat is co	onnected to the lur	ngs through		
	a. esophagus.	b. trachea.	c. small intestine	. d. ribs.	
21.		to the state of th	of the smaller air pa		
	a. air.	b. water.	c. small intestine	. d. blood vess	els.
22.	Inside the lung	s, the trachea is b	ranched into two tu	ubes known as	yedf S
	a. alveoli.	b. air sacs.	c. bronchi.	d. blood vess	els.
23.	The oxygen ga	s moves from air i	nto blood at the	ma sacasa boo	
	a. nose.	b. throat.	c. trachea.	d. lungs.	

- 24. All of the following happen during exhalation, except ........
  - a. diaphragm relaxes.
- b. diaphragm contracts.

  - c. diaphragm moves upward. d. the size of chest decreases.

## Choose from column (B) what suits it in column (A):

1.

(A)	a liver. a brain o brain
1. Esophagus	a. absorbs water from the undigested food to become
2. Small intestine	solid wastes. b. mixes the food with an acid and digestive juices.
3. Large intestine	c. digestion begins in it.
4. Stomach	d. is a long winding tube, its length is more than 6
5. Mouth	meters. e. is a muscular tube that moves the food down into
	the stomach.  f. solid wastes leave the body through it.

3. .....

2.

6 All of th (A) Howing 6	d rombas about the mouth. (B) serios i bns ason is
1. Trachea	a. is a large muscle at the base of the ribs and helps in
2. Blood	inhalation and exhalation.
3. Diaphragm	b. are like balloons and they contain little sacs
J. Diaphragin	surrounded by blood vessels.
4. Lungs	c. carries oxygen to all the body organs.
	d. is a tube through which air travels down into the lungs. e. air enters the body through them.

#### 3 Put (//) or (X):

- 1. The digestive system consists of similar organs that work together to get nutrients from food.
- 2. The human body gets oxygen gas from food.
- 3. Mouth, nose, esophagus and stomach are from the organs of the digestive system.
- 4. The food passes through the large intestine before it goes into the small intestine. (Sohag 2022) (

)	5. Digestion process begins in the stomach with the help of saliva. (Giza 2023) (	)
•	6. Tongue and teeth moisten the food, while saliva crushes the food until it becomes soft.	)
,	7. Food passes from mouth to stomach through a narrow tube known as	
	small intestine. (Qena 2022) (	)
•	8. Food usually stays in stomach for few hours until it becomes a soupy	
	). A large muscle that contracts during breathing trained relations duri. biupil	)
,	9. Stomach mixes the food with juices that come from liver and pancreas. (	)
	10. The food gets broken down into nutrients in the small intestine. (	)
	11. The walls of the small intestine absorb the nutrients through tiny blood vessels then blood carries them to all the body parts. (	)
	12. Swallowing food without chewing keeps the digestive system healthy. (	. )
	13. Digestive system ends by anus. (	)
	14. The air travels down into the lungs through esophagus.	)
	15. During inhalation, the size of chest becomes narrow. (	)
	16. During exhalation, the diaphragm expands. (Sohag 2022) (	)
	17. The inhaled air is rich in carbon dioxide gas, while the exhaled air	
	is rich in oxygen gas. (Menofia 2023) (	)
		)
	is rich in oxygen gas. (Menofia 2023) (	) 
	is rich in oxygen gas. (Menofia 2023) ( Write the scientific term of each of the following:	) )
	is rich in oxygen gas.  Write the scientific term of each of the following:  1. A system that helps in breaking down food into smaller parts.	)
	is rich in oxygen gas.  Write the scientific term of each of the following:  1. A system that helps in breaking down food into smaller parts.  2. A group of organs that work together to perform a specific job.	)
	is rich in oxygen gas.  Write the scientific term of each of the following:  1. A system that helps in breaking down food into smaller parts.  2. A group of organs that work together to perform a specific job.  3. A process of breaking down food into smaller parts that the body	)
	is rich in oxygen gas.  Write the scientific term of each of the following:  1. A system that helps in breaking down food into smaller parts. (	)
	is rich in oxygen gas.  Write the scientific term of each of the following:  1. A system that helps in breaking down food into smaller parts. (	)
	write the scientific term of each of the following:  1. A system that helps in breaking down food into smaller parts. (	)
	Write the scientific term of each of the following:  1. A system that helps in breaking down food into smaller parts. (	)
	is rich in oxygen gas.  Write the scientific term of each of the following:  1. A system that helps in breaking down food into smaller parts. (	)

	10. A long muscular tube that moves the food down into the stomach. ()  11. A process of pulling air in and pushing air out of the body. (
	12. It allows the air to pass from the nose to the trachea. (Alex. 2023) ()
	13. A tube that allows air to pass into the two lungs.
-	14. Little air sacs surrounded by blood vessels in the respiratory system.
	yours semonod tilling study! Wel to nacroste di ryste vilegau (mail. it
-	15. A large muscle that contracts during breathing in and relaxes during
	breathing out. (Beni Suef 2022) (
	The state of the s
5	Complete the following sentences:
	The human body uses system to get nutrients from food and uses system to get oxygen from air.
	2. In order for food to become soft, the and work to mix and grind (crush) the food well.
-	3. In the digestive system, food becomes a soupy liquid in the, while it breaks down into nutrients in
	4. The is a tube that has muscles to move the food down into the
	stomach, while is a long winding tube, its length is more than six meters.
-	5. The longest part of the digestive system where most digestion takes place inside it is
-	6. The small intestine receives juices from and that help in digestion process.
	7. The walls of the small intestine absorb the digested food and transfer it into your blood stream through
	8. In the digestive system, intestine absorbs the nutrients through its wall, while intestine absorbs water from the undigested food.
	9. Air enters and exits the human body through system. (Cairo 2022)
-	10. Inside the lungs, the end with little air sacs known as
-	11. During inhalation, air travels down from your throat to your lungs
	through (Giza 2023)
	12. At the base of your ribs, there is a large muscle that plays an important role in respiration process known as
-	13. During inhalation process, the diaphragm contracts and moves
	while during exhalation process, the diaphragm expands and moves
1	(Menofia 2022)

Give reasons for :	
The human body is made up of different systems.	
2. The importance of juices of liver and pancreas.	C: (F) rep:O
3. Anus is an important organ in the digestive system.	(E) neg O!
4. The inhaled air differs from the exhaled air.	(Suez 2023)
5. Diaphragm plays an important role in respiration proce	SS.
What happens if ?  1. The small intestine is removed from the human body.	2 Size of cheet cay: 3. The air is rich in
The nutrients absorbed by the walls of small intestine ent	er the tiny blood vessels.
3. The diaphragm moves downward during inhalation.	(Minia 2023)
	1. Trachea
4. The diaphragm moves upward during exhalation.	(Cairo 2023)
	The state of the s
Current all III	S. Sepal Intestina
Cross out the odd word :	S. Small intestine E. Ecophagus 7. Diaphragen
1. Saliva – Stomach – Esophagus – Small intestine.	7. Ciaplicagin
	R Funghagus 7. Claphragin

(A)	(B)
Organ (1)	through which food passes to the stomach.
Organ (2)	in which the absorption of nutrients takes place.
Organ (3)	it ends with anus.
Organ (4)	it connects the throat with the two lungs.

### 10 Compare between:

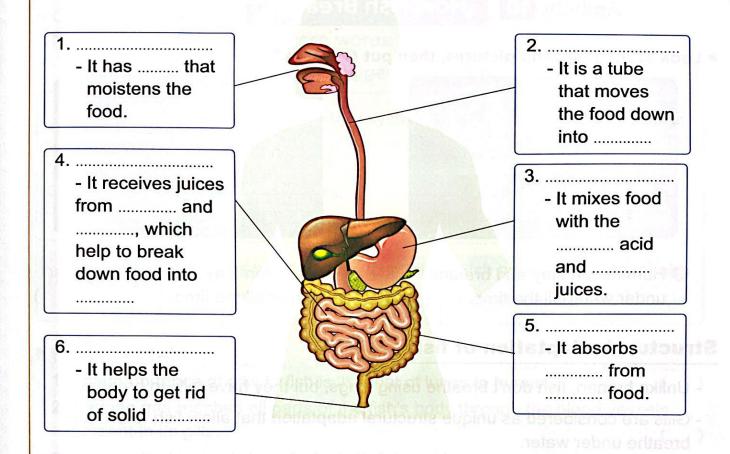
(Cairo 2022)

Points of comparison	Inhalation	Exhalation
1. Diaphragm movement :		
2. Size of chest cavity :		
3. The air is rich in :	gas.	gas.

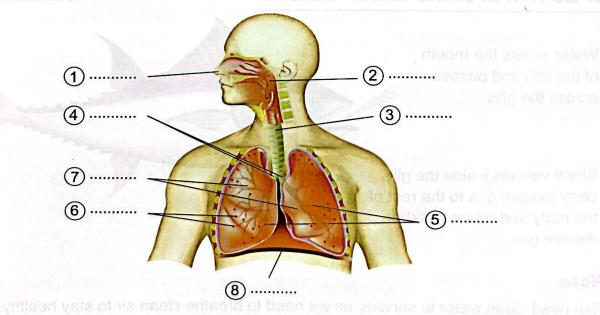
Put ( in front of the name of the system to which each of the following organs belongs:

The organ	The system		
	Digestive	Respiratory	
1. Trachea			
2. Anus			
3. Stomach	and state parties brown	26704117116	
4. Lungs			
5. Small intestine			
6. Esophagus			
7. Diaphragm		(402) (453 ) (1)	
8. Nose		3-1 -2 -2	
9. Large intestine			
10. Liver			
11. Pancreas			
12. Throat			

Look at the following figure which represents the human digestive system, then mention the name of each organ and complete the sentences below:



Look at the following figure which represents the human respiratory system, then label it:



## **LESSON FOUR**

## Activity 10

## **How Fish Breathe**

▶ Look at the following pictures, then put (√) or (x):



1 Human can stay and breathe under water all the time.



Pish can stay and breathe under water all the time.

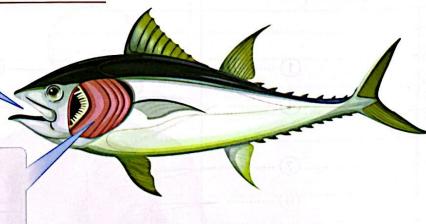
## Structural adaptation of fish:

- Unlike human, fish don't breathe using lungs, but they have gills to breathe.
- Gills are considered as unique structural adaptation that allow fish to live and breathe under water.
- Gills are found on both sides of a fish's head.

## How do fish breathe under water?

Water enters the mouth of the fish and passes across the gills.

Blood vessels inside the gills carry oxygen gas to the rest of the body and release carbon dioxide gas.





#### Note

Fish need clean water to survive, as we need to breathe clean air to stay healthy.

gills

unique الخياشيم

release

يطلق



## Check your understanding

► Compare between the human respiratory system and the fish respiratory system using these words :

(carbon dioxide - blood - oxygen - air - lungs - water - gills)

Points of comparison	The human respiratory system	The fish respiratory system	
Similarities :	- Inhale gas Exhale gas carries oxygen gas to all the body parts.		
Differences :	- Humans have to inhale oxygen gas from	- Fish have to inhale oxygen gas from	

	Put (	1	or	(x)	•
-					•

(	)
vessels (	)
bod icing pla	)
at wate have the wate have	)
	(vessels (

similarities تشابه differences و 69

## Activity 111

## **Humans Change the Environment**

- Human activities cause changes or impacts in the ecosystem over time, so organisms will have to adapt these changes to survive.

## Human activities that cause changes in the environment:



(1) Cutting down forests.



Farming and clearing



**Building communities** instead of grasslands.



(4) Introducing plants and animals into the environment that were never part of the ecosystem.



Air pollution that is caused due to the exhausts from cars and some factories.



6 Water pollution that is caused due to bad habits, such as throwing waste materials to waterways and soil.

### **○** Note

Changes resulted from human activities can cause the disappearance (extinction) of plants and animals that once lived in an environment.

## Give reason for ...

Although the air, water and soil get polluted as a result of human activities, plants and animals can survive.

#### Because:

- Some animals can survive by moving to another ecosystem to find what they need.
- Plants depend on their seeds to land in a better place for them to survive and grow.

disappearance extinction

human activities أنشطة الإنسان

farming أختفاء communities إنقراض exhausts

المجتمعات

waterways نراعة clearing land introduce

pollution الممرات المائية bad habits تسوية الأرض يدُخل

تلوث عادات سيئة  As the human activities have negative effects on animals and plants, they also have negative effects on human such as :







1 Damage of lungs.

2 Asthma (breathing difficulty).

3 Heart diseases.

#### **Notes**

- 1. Water pollution makes the human hard to find clean drinking water.
- 2. Air, water and soil pollution make the crops cannot grow.
- 3. Air pollution (smog) makes the human hard to breathe.
- **4.** People live in cities that have high air pollution level must change their lifestyle to decrease air pollution.

#### The role of human to help restore ecosystem:

- As humans can cause harmful changes, they can help restore their ecosystems by :
  - Replanting the cleared forests.
  - Removing the pollutants of air and water.
  - Preserving plants and animals in these ecosystems.

# 門門

## Check your understanding

#### ▶ Put (√) or (x):

1. Water pollution affects fish, but doesn't affect humans and plants.

2. Humans must keep air, water and soil clean.

In the Assessment Book:

Try to answer:

Self-Assessment 4

negative effects asthma

أثار سلبية مرض الربو

lifestyle remove

damage of lungs نمط الحياد smog

تلیف الرئتین ضباب دخانی

restore

ستعيد

# **Exercises on Lesson 4**

Understand

O Apply

Higher Thinking Skills

1	) C	hoose the correct answer:	
O	1.	. Both of human and fish	
		a. can breathe in air.	b. can breathe in water.
		c. use oxygen gas to breathe in.	d. use carbon dioxide gas to breathe in.
-	2	Fish use to breathe in water.	(Sohag 2022/Sharkia 202
		a. tail b. eyes	c. lungs d. gills
0	3.	. Gills differ from lungs, in that gills .	
1		a. take in oxygen gas.	b. expel out carbon dioxide gas.
		c. extract oxygen gas from water.	d. extract oxygen gas from air.
	4.	. Gills in fish are considered as	. cus neixum sult Lostson (gome) neitulioc n. h. i.
		a. behavioral adaptation.	b. structural adaptation.
		c. camouflage adaptation.	d. behavioral and structural adaptations.
•	5.	All of the following human activitie	s can negatively affect the nature,
		except	
		a. cutting down forests.	b. removing air pollutants.
		c. farming and clearing lands.	d. throwing wastes in waterways.
9	6	. Human activities and bad habits ca	an pollute of an ecosystem.
		a. air and soil only	b. soil and waterways only
		c. air and waterways only	d. air, soil and waterways
0	7.	Pollution of an ecosystem can affect	ct
		a. plants and animals only.	b. animals and humans only.
		c. humans and plants only.	d. plants, animals and humans.
-	8.	If the environment is slowly change	ed, plants to survive and grow.
l		a. must have a taproot	
		b. must have buttress roots	
		c. must decrease their adaptation	
		d. must land their seeds in another	better place
-	9.	From the negative effects of human	activities on the human health are
		a. lung damage and asthma.	b. asthma and wounds.
		c. heart problems and wounds.	d. lung damage and wounds. (Qalyoubia 2022,

	a. replanting the cleared forests.			
	b. removing air and water pollutants.			
	c. producing more factories exhausts.			
	d. preserving existed plants and anima	als.		
	hoose from column (B) what suits it in c	olumn (A) :	1 2	
	(A)	(B)	1.2	
	and may harm existed birds in an ecosystem are  2. Changes that done by human and cause air pollution are  3. Changes that done by human and	<ul> <li>a. building more factories that promore smog inside cities.</li> <li>b. rainfall, floods and severe weat events.</li> <li>c. replanting the cleared forests a removing of air pollutants.</li> <li>d. clearing lands and cutting down forests.</li> </ul>	her nd	Э
L	1	A gus presents	Z- V	b
F	Put (//) or (x): which is bridge laum soloo	A gas which the human and fish be	3	- 50
1	. Human breathes using gills, while fish b	reathes using lungs.	(	)
2	. Gills are found on one side of a fish's he	ead. The strain nothing to both	(	)
3	. Both of lungs and gills take carbon dioxi	ide gas inside the body and		
	release oxygen gas outside the body.		(	)
4	. Gills are unique structural adaptation tha	at allow fish to live and breathe		
	under water.		(	
5	. As human needs clean water to drink, fi	sh needs clean air to breathe.	(	)
6	. Cutting down rainforests may cause disa	appearance of starred agama.	(	)
7	. Throwing waste materials in waterways	is one of the bad habits		
	that must be stopped.		(	
8	<ul> <li>The way of survival of animals differ from is rapidly changed.</li> </ul>	m that of plants, if the ecosystem	(	
9	. Pollution is one of the most dangerous porganisms.	problems that affect all living	(	
1	0. Respiratory problems like lung damage	e and asthma occur when water		
	pollution is high over a long period of ti		(	
	policia in gir over a long period of the			

• 1	<ol> <li>Humans can restore ecosystem as well as they can harm it.</li> </ol>		(	)
	<ol><li>When the pollution level in a city is very high, people are forced to change their lifestyle.</li></ol>	(a) (5)	(	)
4	Correct the underlined words :			
1 1	. Fish use gills to take carbon dioxide gas out of the water.			
	(Menofia 2022)	(	•••••	)
2	. Air enters the mouth of a fish and then passes across the gills.	<b>(</b>		)
3	Blood vessels of lungs and gills are similar in carrying carbon dioxic to all the body parts.	le gas (		)
	. Gills are unique behavioral adaptation that allow fish to breathe under water.	(		,
5	i. When an ecosystem is severely polluted, animals only are affected.	(	· • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •	)
6	. Water pollution is caused due to the smog of factories and cars.	(	·····	)
5 V	Write the scientific term of each of the following :	Chan	G	_
	THE COLUMN TO THE COLUMN THE COLU	(		)
2	2. A gas presents in air and water, and is very important for breathing process. (Behira 2022)	<b>(</b>		)
3	<ol> <li>A gas which the human and fish bodies must get rid of during exhalation process.</li> </ol>	(~) 1s.		)
4	I. A kind of pollution that is caused due to throwing waste materials into the waterways and soil.	GHIS 6	. Ý.	)
5	5. A kind of pollution that is caused due to the exhausts from cars and some factories.	a50 91 (		)
6	Complete the following sentences :	under		_
	. Humans use to breathe, while fish use to breath	e.		
	), grantes the commence of the commence of started against a down to	(Cairo	20	23)
• 2	2. In both human and fish, carries oxygen gas to all the body	3.7		
1	3. Gills of fish are considered as adaptation that allow fish to under water.	nev lately		
	Human activities and bad habits can pollute, ,, ar of an ecosystem.	d soil		21
5	<ol> <li>All living organisms including humans, animals and are af negatively by pollution.</li> </ol>	fected		
÷ 6	6. One of air pollutants that makes human hard to breathe is	uneq.		

Cive resears for .		Esti viiviia A
Give reasons for:		
1. Gills are unique structura	l adaptation in fish.	(Cairo 2023
terms of the continuous continuous day		tma.amsla.olod
2. Cars and factories exhau	sts cause breathing problems.	to mink time science conciler to the
	cities are forced to change their life	style.
What happens if ?		
1. Human activities and bac	I habits increases.	
enconsolvedt	and factories increase in big cities.	Animals and pla benevious to add
3. Water pollution increases	s. (for human and fish).	e gevious claim
		L USA SESSION
	es, then answer the questions :	
1. The death of fish in figure due to	(1) may nappen	M. Davinson
a. wildfires.	b. soil pollution.	
c. water pollution.	d. cutting forests.	
	produced from the factories	Figure (1)
	in the ecosystem.	L. Charles
a. increasing of air polluti		The state of the s
b. decreasing of air pollu		
c. keeping the lungs of hi		A.A.
d. increasing the number		Figure (2)

# **LESSON FIVE**

#### **Record Evidence Like A Scientist** Activity 12

- ▶ In this concept, you have learned a lot about how different types of adaptations help plants and animals survive.
- ▶ In this activity, which will be repeated at the end of each concept, we will learn how to think like scientists to answer a question about one of the main points of this concept through four main steps:
  - Step (1): The Question.
- Step (2): My Claim.
- Step (3): My Evidence.
- Step (4): My Scientific Explanation.

# Step (1) The Question

How do different types of animals and plants adapt to survive in extreme climate?

# <del>② Step 2</del> My Claim

Animals and plants have the ability to change their bodies structures and behaviors to adapt the extreme climate to survive in their environments.

### Note

Your claim should be formed of a sentence that gives an answer for the previous question in step (1).

# Step (3) My Evidence

- Examples of structural adaptations :
  - Some animals have thick fur to keep their bodies warm, while some other animals have extra-long ears to keep their bodies cool.
  - Some plants have tiny leaves to hold in water.
- Examples of behavioral adaptations :
  - Some animals stay in burrows to keep their bodies warm or cool.

You should mention enough and suitable evidence that support your

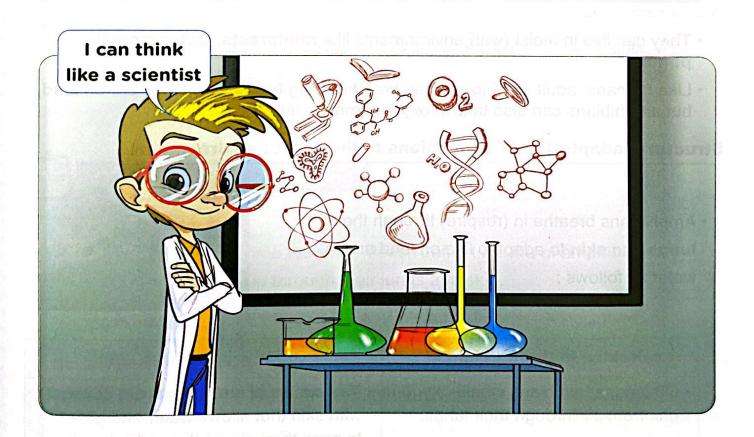
# Step 4 My Scientific Explanation

Animals and plants can survive in extreme climate through structural and behavioral adaptations, where:

- The structural adaptation in the polar bears that have thick fur and penguins that have a layer of fat to adapt the cold climate in polar regions.
- The structural adaptation in fennec foxes that have extra-long ears and also the behavioral adaptation as they stay in burrows to adapt the hot climate in desert regions.
- The structural adaptation in acacia trees that have tiny leaves to hold in water to adapt hot climate in savannah regions.

### Note

Your scientific explanation should explain your claim and evidence introducing some supportive examples from what you have learned.



supportive

scientist داعم

# Activity 13 S T E M in Action

### **Careers and adaptation:**

- Through researches, scientists can learn how different organisms adapt to their environments and help endangered species survive.
- In this lesson, we are going to study **amphibians** which are one of the most amazing living organisms on Earth.

### **Amphibians:**

They are small animals that live on land and in water such as:







- They can live in moist (wet) environments like rainforests, water streams and ponds.
- Like humans, adult amphibians can breathe using lungs when they are on land, but amphibians can also take in oxygen from water.

### Structural adaptation of amphibians to live in wet environments:

 Amphibians breathe in (respire) through their lungs and skin to adapt to live on land and in water as follows:



Golden frog

Breathe in through lungs	Breathe in through skin
On land, amphibians inhale oxygen gas from air through their lungs.	The bodies of amphibians are covered with skin that allows water and gases to pass through, so they can absorb (extract) oxygen directly from water.

careers وظائف endangered species الأنواع المهددة بالإنقراض skin

amphibians وظائف الأنواع ال researches برمائیات pond بالغ أبحاث بركة ماء

- Amphibians need clean water and air to stay healthy, because they are very sensitive to the effects of:
  - Water pollution.
- Air pollution.
- Viruses that can travel through water.

#### The role of scientists to protect many types of amphibians from extinction:

- Scientists (biologists) are working to save many types of amphibians from extinction by studying:
  - How amphibians breathe in air and water.
  - Factors cause air and water pollutions that affect the life of amphibians.
  - What make these animals sick in their environments.

### How do people help in protection of amphibians from extinction?

- Clean air and water are important for amphibians, so people should :
  - Avoid throwing waste materials in water.
  - Dispose of chemicals in a correct way helps to avoid water pollution.

# **○** Note

Ninety species of amphibians have become extinct in the last 20 years in addition to 124 other endangered species.

## Check your understanding

### ▶ Put (√) or (x):

- 1. Throwing chemicals into the water doesn't affect the life of amphibians. (
- 2. Amphibians breathe in through their lungs and skin.

### Review on Concept (1.1)

To review this concept look at the Assessment Book "Part 2: Final Revision".

#### In the Assessment Book:

#### Try to answer:

- Self-Assessment (5)
- Model Exam on Concept (1.1)

sensitive biologists protection

viruses

golden frog الضفدع الذهبي فيروسات

dispose of extinct furniture

ينقرض أثاث المنزل

in addition to بتخلص من operate

بالإضافة إلى ئشغل

# **Exercises on Lesson 5**

	Understand	O Apply	Higher Thinking Skills			
1	Choose the correct answer:					
	1. Amphibians are adapted		that suits their adaptation.			
	a. dry environment		oist environment			
	c. arctic environment	d. sa	andy environment			
o l	2. Starred agama and salan		s bhahag ni antecna are datame a cet -			
	a. both are reptiles.					
	b. both are amphibians.	b. both are amphibians.				
	c. the first is a reptile, whi	le the second	is an amphibian.			
1	d. the first is amphibian, v	while the seco	nd is reptile.			
	3. If amphibians have gills a through skin, then	nd they don't	have lungs and also cannot respire			
	a. they cannot live outside	e water.	on the large in a common to the part of			
	b. they can live outside w	ater.				
	c. they cannot live under water.					
	d. they can live in desert	landscapes.				
	4. Amphibians can take in oxygen gas from					
	a. water only.		only.			
	c. food and air.		ater and air.			
0	5. In rainforests, we can find		Pun in 1994 general control of			
-	Name of the second seco	a. panther chameleon and arctic foxes.				
	b. amphibians and fenned					
2	c. arctic foxes and fenned					
į	d. panther chameleon and					
	<ol><li>If the number of an anima natural habitat, this mean</li></ol>	and the second s	omes zero due to severe changes in its ecies			
	a. becomes endangered.	b. be	ecomes extinct.			
	c. will survive.	d. go	ing to be extinct.			
	7 . Both humans and amphil sentences is correct?		in oxygen. Which of the following			
gr.	a. Both can breathe in oxygen gas through lungs.					
	b. Both can take in oxyge	b. Both can take in oxygen gas through skin.				
	c. Humans can breathe in	c. Humans can breathe in oxygen gas from water and air.				
	d Amphibiana aan breath	o in ovygon a	on through aille			

	8. Blood vessels that carry oxygen gas in amphibians, present in	
	a. skin and digestive system.	
	b. lungs and eyes.	
	c. digestive system and eyes.	
	d. skin and lungs.	
	9. Amphibians, lizards, trees, birds, fish and humans	
	a. some of them need oxygen gas to respire.	
	b. some of them need carbon dioxide gas to respire.	
	c. all of them need oxygen gas to respire.	
	d. all of them need carbon dioxide gas to respire.	
	10. If a pond where some frogs live is highly polluted with wastes and viruses.	
	What you have to do to preserve these frogs?	
	a. Fill in the pond with sand.	
	b. Dry this pond from water.	
	c. Supply this pond with more oxygen gas.	
	d. Transfer these frogs to a clean water habitat.	
2	Put (//) or (x):	
•	1. Amphibians include frogs and salamanders. (Alex. 2023) (	)
•	2. The natural habitat of amphibians is rainforest, while that of panther	
	chameleon is desert.	)
•	3. The number of amphibians increases in the last few years, due to	
	restoring of its ecosystem.	)
	4. Arctic foxes and amphibians cannot be found in the same habitat.	)
•	5. Salamanders and fish can breathe in air through lungs.	)
	6. In the habitat of amphibians, we can find some types of reptiles.	)
•	7. Scientists try to save golden frogs from extinction.	)
	8. Clean water and air are very important for respiration process in	
	amphibians.	)
•	9. It is important to advice people not to throw waste materials in waterways	
	to save amphibians' life.	)

6	<b>.</b> .	the the establisham of each of the following:
5		/rite the scientific term of each of the following:
		Species that include frogs, toads and salamanders. ()
	2.	The organ through which salamanders can take in oxygen gas directly
		from water.
•	3.	A gas is present in water and air that living organisms breathe in during
		respiration. (Cairo 2022) ()
•	4.	The type of adaptation that allows frog to take in oxygen gas from
		water directly through the skin.
o	5.	A respiratory organ that contains little sacs, and found in humans, frogs
		and cows but not in fish.
4	C	omplete the following sentences :
•	1.	Starred agama lizard is a, while frog is an
\ \ \	2.	Humans, amphibians and reptiles have to breathe in oxygen gas
		from air.
o o	3.	Bull shark can respire through only, while salamander can respire
		through and
O	4.	Both humans and adult amphibians have no that is present in fish for
-		respiration.
	5.	As the pollution rate of water in ponds and air increases, the number of
		amphibians
•	6.	Amphibians have two ways to breathe in oxygen, one from air through
		and the other from water through
	7.	The ability of amphibians to take in oxygen gas from water through the skin, is
		considered as adaptation. (Giza 2022)
	8.	All living organisms breathe in oxygen gas and gives out as a waste
		product. This applies the product of
	9.	Pollution of and may cause a big problem on the
		amphibiane survival
	7	Bott damans and ampulping residue at the activity of east of Att State of Co.
5		orrect the underlined words:
Ī		Fish can breathe only in <u>air</u> .
	2.	Amphibians live in dry environments.
	3.	Starred agama is a reptile, while frog is a lizard.
	4	Amphibians have gills as well as humans for respiration

5. Amphibians can take in o	carbon dioxide gas from air for res	piration. ()
6. In rainforests, we can find	d panther chameleon and arctic fo	<u>ox</u> . ()
7. Reptiles have two differen	nt ways for breathing.	()
8. Humans and frogs can be	reathe in oxygen gas in water.	()
Give reasons for :	ing habitat, had a carr breating	usa am m avil .c
1. Skin of fish is different fro	om that of frog, although both of th	nem live in water.
oi nailmead	s zenna in vat alma ta tena vi ad. et bebyrizen Luzza, batebia nod 817	en la renacea, ini. S. Ure senacea, inig
2. Dry seasons is very harn	nful for amphibians.	a. change of the
shavioral adaptation.	way of diinking d. a type of be	ent to egnado
O Dellution of six and mater	18W 100 (01 598) 20181(180	a. long trunk
3. Pollution of air and water	r can affect the survival of amphibi	ians. Terionisid phol p
4. Scientists must study how	w amphibians interact with their er	nvironments.
	e. dangua.	C. Small Intestin
What happens if ?	ter und rondysing :	(B) Give a reason
1. Pollution level increases	in the natural habitat of amphibiar	IS.
2. The ecosystem of amphil	bians is containing clean air and w	ater.
3. Amphibians don't have lu	ings and breathe only through skir	Cal (A) Fue (A) or (B)  1. Both salaman
4. The number of predators	of amphibians increases.	snow 3. Panthor chamu
	s ofner one to look out for danger	ull bns beet tol
5. Salamanders have lungs	only to respire.	
	î îi :	energied tanW (8)
6. Skin of frogs becomes dry	nonesenxa gamub baewgu savoer :: V.	траттідско елі Г
- Cian of nogo 2000		

# **Model Exam** 1



# Total mark 15

# on Concept (1.1)

1	(A) Choose the correct answer:	(5 marks)				
	1. Both golden frog and polar bear,					
	a. live in the same habitat.	b. can breathe in oxygen gas in water.				
	c. have the same body coat.	d. are living organisms.				
	2. The color of the body coat of arctic	fox changes according to				
	the season, this is considered as					
	a. change of the way of breathing.	b. a type of structural adaptation.				
	c. change of the way of drinking.	d. a type of behavioral adaptation.				
	3. In dry desert, most plants need	to get water from the sandy soil.				
	a. long trunk	b. long roots				
	c. long branches	d. long leaves				
	4. The food moves into the stomach t	through the (Alex. 2023)				
	a. esophagus.	b. trachea.				
	c. small intestine.	d. tongue.				
	(B) Give a reason for the following:					
	Gills are unique structural adapta					
	Madrial of amphibians,	TIBIDIEN BITTIN EBERBICH TAVAL HOUDING				
	6.0000000000000000000000000000000000000					
	ning claan air and water.	z i i se ecosystem of ampribians is contain				
2	(A) Put (🗸) or (X) :	(5 marks)				
	1. Both salamander and fish can brea	athe in through lungs. ( )				
	2. In polar environment, the sandy-co	olored fur of caracal helps it blend in with				
	snow.	equipped of profigious longitudes of amphibitions				
		zard can use one of their eyes for searching				
	for food and the other one to look	. 11 원래, 15 - 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1				
	<ol> <li>Adaptation to store water is an impose desert environment.</li> </ol>	portant character for plants that live in dry ( )				
	(B) What happens if ?					
	The diaphragm moves upward du	uring exhalation. (Minia 2023)				
		An enulode Sections of				

(A) Correct the underlined words :	(5 marks)
1. Amphibians live in dry environments.	()
2. Reptiles like toads have two different ways for breathing.	()
3. Fish use gills to take in carbon dioxide gas out of the water.	()
<ol> <li>Mangrove tree has wide leaves to absorb a large amount of sunlight.</li> </ol>	()
(B) Give only one example of behavioral adaptation in bull shark.	

# **Model Exam** 2

# Total mark 15

# on Concept (1.1)

(A) Write the scientific term of each of the following:	(5 marks)
1. It covers the body of some types of bears to keep their bodies was	rm ()
<ol><li>A feature in bull shark, in which the lower surface of its body is lighter than its upper surface.</li></ol>	()
<ol><li>A plant lives in salt water environment and it has long roots to resi water waves.</li></ol>	ist ()
4. An organ through which solid wastes of digestion leave the body.	()
(B) Cross out the odd word:	
1. Penguin – Acacia tree – Pine tree – Polar bear.	()
2. Panther chameleon – Fennec fox – Bull shark – Agama lizard.	()
<ul> <li>(A) Choose the correct answer:</li> <li>1. The stomach has an acid that helps in</li></ul>	(5 marks)
<ul> <li>2. Water lily has wide floating leaves to</li></ul>	
3. All of the following living organisms live in desert, except      a. palm tree.     b. pine tree.     c. starred agama lizard.     d. fennec fox.	
4. Amphibians absorb oxygen directly from water by their	
<ul> <li>(B) Correct the underlined words:</li> <li>1. Gills are unique <u>behavioral</u> adaptation that allow fish to breathe under water.</li> </ul>	()

2. Small intestine is a long muscular tube that mov	es toda down into
the stomach.	()
(A) Look at the opposite figures, then answer	the questions below:
(1) Which figure represents inhalation ? ()	
(2) Which figure represents exhalation ? ()	
(3) In figure (a), muscle contracts and the size of chest	

Figure (a)

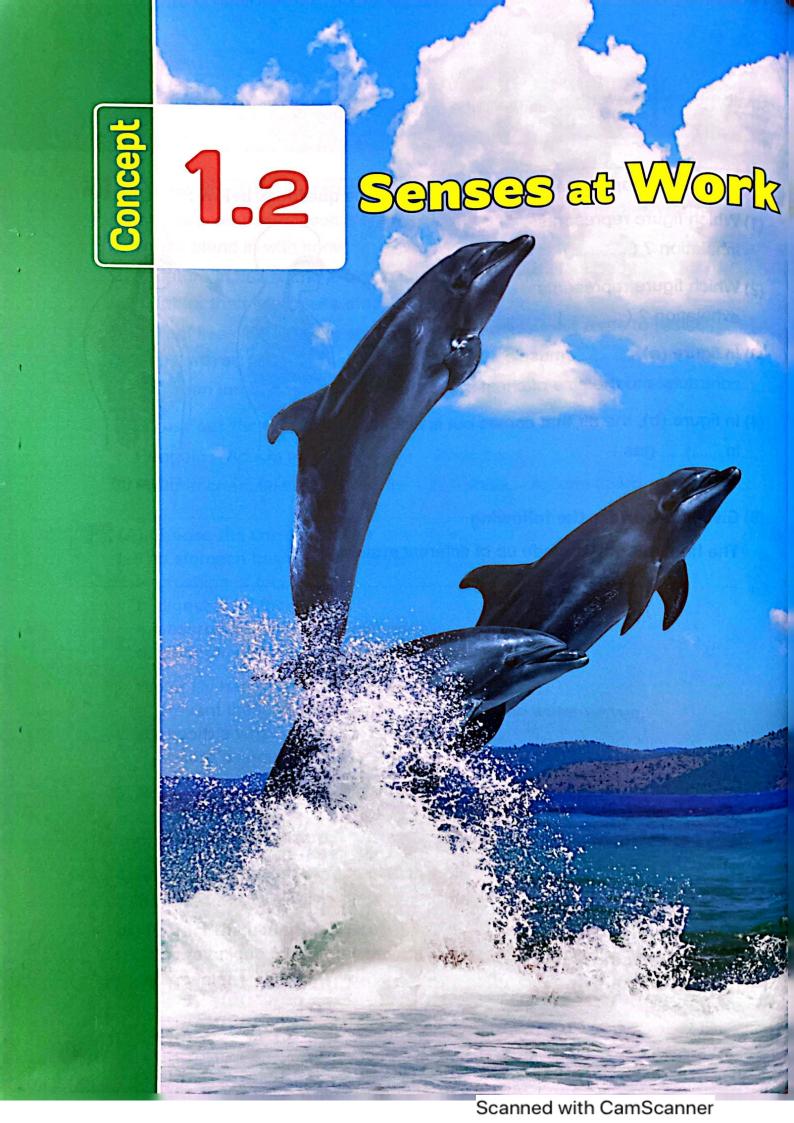
Figure (b)

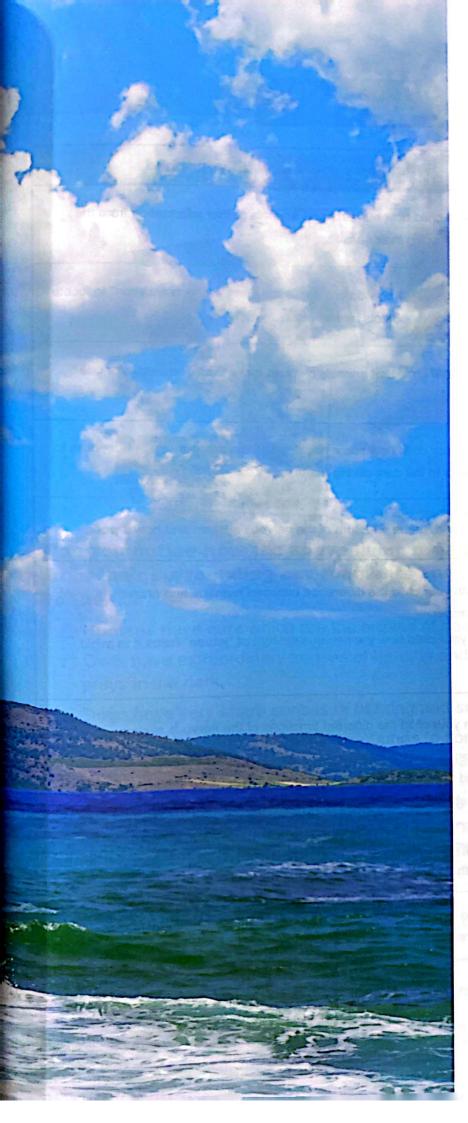
### (B) Give a reason for the following:

in ..... gas .

(4) In figure (b), the air that comes out is rich

The human body is made up of different systems.





### **Learning outcomes**

# By the end of this concept, your child will be able to:

- Develop models illustrating how animals receive, process and react to information in their environments.
- Explain how organs and systems work together to process and respond to input from the senses.
- Plan and carry out investigations to produce evidence that the senses play a role in reaction time.
- Argue, using evidence, that light and sound allow for the transfer of information through systems of communication.
- Compare innovative human designs to systems of communication in the natural world.

# Key vocabulary

- Brain
- Receptor
- Reflex
- Senses
- Sound
- 501.500
- SECTION.
- Information
- Nerve
- Echolocation
- Echo
- Communication systems

Scanned with CamScanner

# **Notes For Parents** On Concept [1.2]

Lessons	Activities	What you should do with your child
	Activity 1	Explain to your child how humans and animals gather information from the environment by using their senses.
1	Activity 2	Discuss with your child how dolphins use the sense of "echolocation" to locate their preys and other objects under water.
	Activity 3	Discuss with your child that animals can use more than one sense for one purpose.
	Activity 4	Discuss with your child how some nocturnal animals use their super senses to hunt their preys in the dark during the nighttime.
	Activity 5	Explain to your child the structure of the nervous system and how it works.
2	Activity 6	<ul> <li>Discuss with your child the difference between humans and animals in avoiding danger.</li> <li>Explain to your child how the nervous system of "jerboa" helps it to avoid danger.</li> </ul>
	Activity 7	Discuss with your child the different functions of the nervous system.
3	Activity 8	Let your child answer some questions about the nervous system and its functions to check his/her understanding.
	Activity 9	<ul> <li>Explain to your child how ants communicate with each other.</li> <li>Discuss with your child the way of communication that humpback whale use.</li> </ul>
4	Activity 10	Let your child know the similarities and differences between the special cane of the blind person and the bat echolocation property.

# **LESSON ONE**

Activity 1

**Can You Explain?** 





Can you notice how the above living organisms receive information from their surrounding environments and how they are responding to them?

- 1 Humans have ears which are the organs of hearing to listen to music.
- 2 Owls have extraordinary senses of hearing and sight to be able to find their preys in the dark.
- 3 Dogs have very sharp senses of hearing and smell, which are used in guarding.
- The Egyptian mongoose makes sounds to communicate with other mongooses to move from one place to another or when searching for food.
- From the previous explanation we conclude that: Animals have senses like humans that enable them to communicate with each other and adapt to their surrounding environments.
- In this concept, we will study:
  - Dolphin senses.
  - Super senses of some animals.
  - The nervous system and how it works.
  - Songs of whales.

- How the five senses work.
- Communication systems.

extraordinary responding

يستجيب

Egyptian mongoose أستثنائي

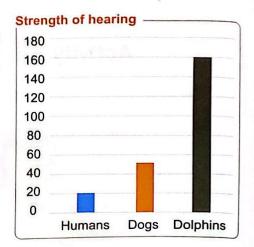
guarding النمس المصرى

حراسة

91

# Activity 2 Dolphin Senses

- ▶ Look at the opposite graph, then put (√) or (x): Living organisms in the graph have similar hearing senses.
- Dolphins have sharp senses that help them survive through:
  - Finding food.
  - Protecting themselves under water.
- The most sharp sense that dolphins have is the sense of hearing, since they can hear all kinds of sound.

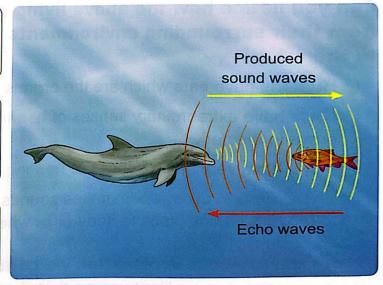


# How can dolphins locate organisms and other things under water?

Dolphins use a property known as "echolocation" that depends on "echo" to determine the location of other living organisms and objects in the water.

Echo is the bouncing back of sound waves when they hit a solid surface.

- Let's see how dolphin use the sense of echolocation :
- Dolphin produces sound waves that travel through water.
- These waves hit objects then bounce back to the dolphin in the form of echo.
- Echo helps the dolphin to locate its prey and other objects.





### Check your understanding

- ▶ Put (√) or (\*):
  - Smell is one of the most sharp senses of dolphins.
  - 2. Echo helps dolphins locate their preys.

sharp senses survive locate

echolocation الحواس الفائقة echo يتعابش

waves یحدد مکان

hit تحديد الموقع بالصدى

bounce صدی

يصطدم يرتد (يرجع)

# **Activity** 3

## What Do You Already Know About Senses at Work?

#### ► Animal perceptions :

- You have known that animals have senses like those of humans.
- Each animal can use more than one sense for more than one purpose to adapt to its habitat, as shown in the following examples:

Animal Animal	Senses Senses	The purpose
Fox	Hearing and sight	Avoiding danger  Hithere is some salt in
Chameleon	g, touch, and smell, and smell, bearing, and sme	a sight, movement, tast c. taste, touch, movement
Dog Company of the co	Smell and sight	Recognizing friends
Monkey	Touch, smell, sight, taste and hearing	Identifying objects  Soognom natioved enT



## Check your understanding

# 5. Side helps human distinguish between the tasts of different types of the tasts of (x) in (√) side (x) in (√) the tasts of the tasts

- 1. The owl can search for food using its sight sense. (
- 2. The cat can avoid danger using its taste sense. (

In the Assessment Book:
Try to answer:
Self-Assessment 6

93

perceptions	الإدراك الحسى	adapt	يتكيف	avoid	يتجنب
purpose	الغرض	recognizing	التعرف على		

# **Exercises on Lesson 1**

Understand

O Apply

Higher Thinking Skills

1	c	hoose the correct answer:		
o	1.	To know if a cup of water is hot or cold, we need to use the sense of		
		a. sight. b. hearing. c. smell. d. touch.		
\rightarrow \limits	2.	We can distinguish between water and milk through		
		a. taste and hearing. b. sight and hearing.		
		c. smell and hearing. d. taste and sight.		
•	3.	The sensory organs of a dolphin help it do all of the following, except	•••	
		a. surviving. b. finding food.		
		c. finding water.  d. protecting itself under water.		
\rightarrow \limits	4.	If there is some salt in a dish and some sugar in another dish, you can		
		distinguish between them through the sense of		
		a. smell. b. taste. c. touch. d. hearing.		
	5.	The five senses of humans and animals are		
		a. sight, hearing, touch, smell, and movement.		
		b. sight, movement, taste, touch, and smell.		
		c. taste, touch, movement, hearing, and smell.		
		d. sight, hearing, taste, smell, and touch.		
•	6.	Echo helps bats and dolphins to locate of their preys.		
		a. the location b. the color		
		c. the smell d. the taste		
•	7.	Dolphins depend on their sharp sense of to get food.		
		a. sight b. taste c. smell d. hearing		
2	Pı	ut (V) or (X):		
-	1.	A human can identify music through ears which are the organs of sight.	(	)
	2.	The Egyptian mongoose can communicate with its species by making		
		sounds.	(	)
•	3.	The sense of hearing of dolphins is stronger than that of human.	(	)
o	4.	We use our sense of smell to identify the color of a flower.	(	)
O		Skin helps human distinguish between the taste of different types of		
		food through the sense of touch.	(	)
O	6.	Chameleon uses its tongue to taste food.	i	)
O		Foxes have sharp sense of taste to avoid dangers.		)
		Bats depend on camouflage property to find its food.	(	)
Í	٠.	-andparis an adminage property to find its 1000.	-	,

	Write the scientific term of each of the following:  1. The property that depends on the sense of hearing through which dolphins locate their preys under water.  2. The organ used to recognize different colors.  3. The organ used to recognize different odors.  4. The sense used to differentiate between smooth and rough surfaces.  5. The return back of sound waves on hitting a solid surface.  (
4	Complete the following sentences :
	<ol> <li>The dog uses the senses of</li></ol>
5	Correct the underlined words:
	1. The dolphin has sharp sense of touch.  2. The dog uses its eyes to recognize odor of humans.  3. The fox uses its tail and ears to run away when it sees or hears its enemies.  4. Dolphins and dogs use echolocation property to hunt.  ()
6	Give reasons for:
-	1. The Egyptian mongoose make sounds.
	2. Owls can hunt during the night.
	3. Dogs are used in guarding.
	4. Dolphins can hear all kinds of sound. (Cairo 2023)
7	What happens to ?
	The sound waves produced by a dolphin when they hit an object under water.

8	Arrange the following steps to illustrate how	v dolphins use their sharp hearing
	to catch preys :	

(.....) The sound waves travel and hit the prey, then bounce back to the dolphin in the form of an echo.

(.....) The echo helps the dolphin locate its prey.

(.....) The sound produced by a dolphin is transmitted in the form of waves called sound waves.

# Dook at the following pictures, then choose the correct answer:



Animal (1)



Animal (2)

- 1. The sharpest senses that animal (1) has are .........
  - a. touch and smell.

b. smell and hearing.

c. taste and sight.

- d. hearing and taste.
- 2. Animal (1) uses one or both of its sharpest senses in each of the following situations, except ......
  - a. identifying friends.

- b. identifying food.
- c. recognizing strangers.
- d. tasting food.
- 3. The sharpest sense that animal (2) has is .........
  - a. hearing.

b. taste.

c. touch.

- d. smell.
- 4. Animal (2) uses its super sense in each of the following situations, except ....
  - a. locating objects under water.
  - b. avoiding danger.
  - c. detecting scents of living organisms under water.
  - d. locating preys under water.

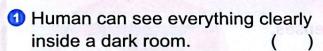
# **LESSON TWO**

# Activity 4

### **Sensory Organs of Nocturnal Animals**

▶ Look at the following pictures, then put (√) or (x):







2 An owl can see its prey in the dark during nighttime. ( )

- You can hear the noise of something moving through the darkness, even you cannot see it clearly.
- Some animals known as "Nocturnal animals" look for their food at night using their sharp senses.

#### Nocturnal animals:

They are animals that become active at night to look for their food.

- Why do some animals become active at night?
  - In extremely hot places, the best time to look for food is nighttime, when
    it is cooler.
  - 2. Some animals hunt food that is only available at night.
  - 3. Some animals depend on darkness to hide from their preys and surprise them.
- ▶ How can nocturnal animals hunt without much available light?

Super sensory adaptations of nocturnal animals allow them to navigate safely and find food in the dark, as shown in the following examples:

#### 1. Bats :

- Bats depend on echolocation to find their food.

#### Purpose:

To help bats move around and find its food (preys) at night.



#### Notes

- Both bats and dolphins use echolocation to find their food.
- 2. Unlike dolphins, bats are nocturnal animals that can hunt at night.

#### 2. Owls :

- Owls have very sharp sight and hearing senses.
- \* Owl's face :

It has a bowl-shaped face with special type of feathers in its head. G.R.

- To direct distant sounds into the owl's ears.
- \* Owls' large eyes :

Its eyes allow the owl to see tiny and far-away movements of their preys.



Its head has the ability to turn in all directions. G.R.

- To search for preys everywhere.

### Purpose:

To detect the movements and sounds of tiny distant preys.





## Check your understanding

#### Choose the correct answer:

- 1. The senses of ...... are from the very sharp senses in owls.
  - a. hearing and smell b. sight and smell c. sight and hearing
- 2. Which of the following animals are not a nocturnal animal?
  - a. Bat.

b. Dolphin.

c. Owl.

bowl-shaped 98

feathers شکل وعاء

amplify ریش

direct تضخيم

# **Activity** 5 The Nervous System

- Senses work together with the nervous system to gather information from the environment.
- Mammals such as humans, elephants and dogs have the same structure of nervous system.

### The nervous system consists of:

- The brain.
- The spinal cord. Nerves.

#### The brain

It is connected to the spinal cord.

#### Its function:

It is the main control center in the body.

#### The spinal cord

- It is a big nerve that runs through the backbone.
- It is branched into smaller and smaller nerves.

#### Its function:

It carries messages from the brain to the body parts and vice versa.

#### **Nerves**

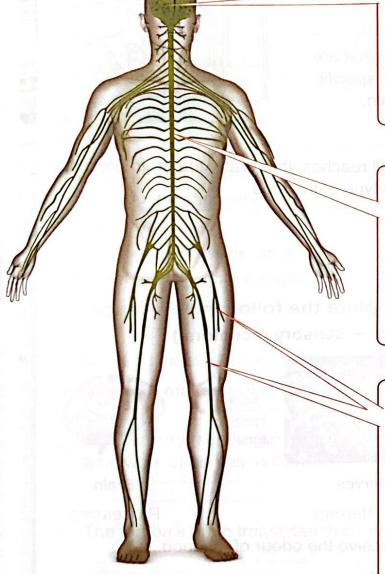
Nerves are distributed throughout the body and connect the sense organs and the body parts with the brain.

#### Their function:

They carry messages from the brain to the spinal cord and other parts of the body and vice versa.

#### Note:

Some nerves are connected directly to the brain such as the nerves of eyes.



Human nervous system

### Notes

- 1. The nerves transmit information from the sensory organs to the brain.
- 2. The five sensory organs contain a special type of nerves known as sensory receptors.

### Sensory receptors :

They are nerves found in different parts of the body that are responsible for receiving information from the environment.

### How does the nervous system work if you smell pizza?

- 1. The sense organ (nose) receives the information from the environment which is the pizza's odor.
- 2. Then the sensory receptors of smell that are found in the back of your nose send specific signals along the nerves to your brain.



3. Once the information about the smell reaches your brain, the brain processes that information and determines the type of the food.



## Check your understanding

Using the words bellow to complete the following sentences:

(brain - processes - sensory receptors)



transfer through



send specific signals to



Nose

Nerves

Brain

Receive information

Transferring

**Processing** 

- 1. The nose contains ...... that receive the odour of the food.
- 2. The odour transfers to the brain through .....
- 3. The brain ..... these information and determine the type of the food.

transmit odor

signals رائحة

sensory receptors

مستقبلات حسبة

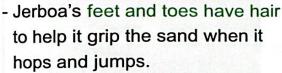
# **Activity 6** Sensing the Environment

In this activity, we will learn how structural adaptations and the nervous system work together to help the jerboa survive.

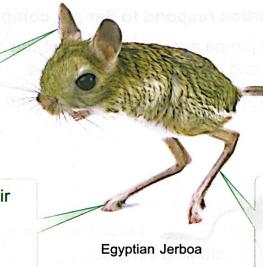
### Jumping jerboa:

- The Egyptian jerboa is a desert rodent.
- It searches for food at night.
- Jerboa adaptations to the environment :

Jerboa has large and sensitive ears, so it can detect even a quiet snake. (Structural adaption)



 It hops in zigzag patterns, so it can escape quickly from danger.
 (Behavioral adaptation)



Jerboa has long hind legs that enable it to jump a long distance. (Structural adaptation)

How do all parts of a jerboa's body work together to avoid danger?
When a snake makes noise as it comes near a jerboa to hunt it:

The sensory receptors in the jerboa's ears send a message through a network of nerves to its brain.

The jerboa's brain translates this message and alerts its legs to move.

The jerboa's strong hopping legs start to jump away from the danger (the snake) in zigzag paths.

jerboa rodent grip حيوان اليربوع zigzag patterns قارض

hind يمسك detect

خلفية

- The jerboa's sharp sense of hearing and its strong legs for jumping work together with its nervous system to help it survive.
- The whole response process of the jerboa running away from danger occurs in less than one second. The time taken by a jerboa to react to danger is known as the "reaction time".

#### Reaction time:

It is the time taken by the body of a living organism to respond and react to different information from the environment (such as danger).

- How does the jerboa respond to danger compared to a human ?
  - Both human and jerboa avoid danger by relying on sensory receptors, nerves and a brain to sense and communicate messages.
  - Both human and jerboa move quickly away from danger for their safety.

### **Examples:**



- Jerboa hops in zigzag patterns, so it can escape quickly from danger.



 Human moves quickly his hand away, when it touches the spines of a cactus plant.



# Check your understanding

### ▶ Put (✔) or (★):

- When a jerboa feels unsafe, its brain sends messages to its legs through its nervous system to run away from danger.
- The reaction time is the time taken by a jerboa to respond to danger.
- 3. Jerboa's hind legs are short to help it jump long distances.

In the Assessment Book: Try to answer: Self-Assessment (7)

102

alert

reaction time پنبه/پحذر

spines زمن الإستجابة

cactus أشواك

# **Exercises on Lesson 2**

Understand Apply Higher Thinking Skills Choose the correct answer : 1. The senses you depend on to find a small radio that produces low sound in a dark room are a. hearing and smell. b. touch and taste. c. smell and taste. d. hearing and touch. 2. The responsible system for moving your hand away from danger, such as touching a hot cup of tea, is the ..... system. a. digestive b. respiratory c. nervous d. urinary 3. When snakes make a noise, the sensory receptors found in jerboa's ...... send a warning message to the brain. d. teeth a. ears b. nose c. feet 4. The brain is the main control center in the body, so it can deal with ..... at the same time. b. three senses only a. two senses only d. all the five senses c. four senses only 5. Animals that become active at night are called ...... (Cairo 2023/Gharbia 2022) b. nocturnal animals. a. diurnal animals. d. endangered animals. c. extinct animals. 6. When your hand touches the spines of a cactus plant, it is withdrawn in ........ b. one minute. a. less than one second. d. one hour. c. two minutes. 7. When a jerboa hears the sound of a moving snake, it ........ a. remains standing in its place. b. jumps to hunt the snake. c. makes sounds to frighten the snake. d. jumps quickly to run away from the snake. 8. The organ that processes the information collected through the sense of sight is ..... b. nerves. a. the spinal cord.

d. eyes.

9. The nervous system of mammals consists of ......

c. the brain.

a. the brain only.

b. the spinal cord only.

c. nerves and the spinal cord only.

d. the brain, the spinal cord and nerves.

report -

(Cairo 2022)

103

10. Both the spinal cord and nerves	
a. are located in the brain.	
<ul> <li>b. are located in the small intestin</li> </ul>	
c. transmit messages from the bra	ain to all parts of the body only.
d. transmit messages from the bra	ain to all parts of the body and vice versa.
11. Which of the following choices ex food in the correct order ?	plains how the body reacts to the smell of
	b. Nose —→ brain —→ nerves.
	d. Nose —→ nerves —→ brain.
12. The correct order for a bat to loca	ate a mosquito using echo, is
	reaches the bat — returns to mosquito.
	nes a wall — returns to mosquito.
	reaches a wall —— returns to mosquito.
	nes the mosquito — returns to bat.
	rties to sense distant preys that make low
sounds, except	(Menofia 2022)
a. large eyes.	
b. a bowl-shaped face.	
c. a head that turns in all direction	ns.
d. weak sense of hearing.	5 Avinseis non recome active at night are o
the second secon	aped face are considered as adaptation.
a. only structural	napsu lass are considered as
b. only behavioural	
c. both structural and behavioral	
d. neither structural nor behaviora	o by minutes
15. Flying bats don't hit different obje	
a. see them clearly in darkness.	b. touch them.
c. smell them.	d. hear the echo reflected from them.
	ing the night due to the following reasons,
except that	Gold Worther See Sold 1837 nagro et 1.7
a. the night is characterized by the	
b. the night is a good time for rela	
c. the night is quiet, so that they c	[[선물: 사람이 보고 사용을 다시하는 사람이 되었다. 그 사람들이 되었다. 그렇게 되었다면 하는데 보다 없다.
d. the night is a time when preys a	
17 . Both bats and mosquitoes are ac statements is correct ?	tive during night. Which of the following
a. Both can swim well.	b. Both can run fast.
<ul> <li>c. Bats prey on mosquitoes.</li> </ul>	d. Mosquitoes prey on bats.

# Choose from column (B) what suits it in column (A):

• (1)

(A)	or Househall and of evidence des (B) it some lave to deligion to
1. Bat	a. It is a flying nocturnal animal that can hear the quiet movements of rats.
2. Owl	<ul><li>b. It is a desert rodent that has large and sensitive ears.</li><li>c. It is a non-flying mammal.</li></ul>
3. Jerboa	d. It is a flying nocturnal animal that sound reflects to it after hitting insects.

(A)	. To the drail? to be proce (B) . Then identifying the foot eye	
1. Sensory	a. It is the main control center in the body.	
receptors	b. They are electrical impulses that reach the brain.	
2. Nerves	c. It is found in the backbone and helps transmit messages between the body and the brain.	
3. Brain	d. They are found on the sensory organs and the first to sense the surrounding environment.	
4. Spinal cord e.They receive information from the sensory receptors		

1	2	3	Assum assumblement	
•	<b>Z.</b>	J	4	
1		The second second second	T	5/4110

3	Put	(V)	or	X	

1. Animals that active during the daytime are called nocturnal animals.	(	)
2. The Egyptian jerboa lives in forests.	(	)
3. The Egyptian jerboa has large ears which help in sensing the snakes.	(	)
4. The owl depends on echo to determine the location of preys within		
the grass or beneath the snow.	(	)
5. A bat makes sounds that hit insects and then bounce back to it, so		
the bat can locate them.	(	)
6. The body senses and systems work separately when animals run away		
from their enemies.	(	)
7. Some animals have abilities that humans do not have, and these abilities		
are called super sensory adaptations.	(	)
8. The sensory receptors in the eyes receive the sound produced by a radio		
and send it to the brain.	(	)

<ul><li>9. The Egyptian jerboa can jump for long distances depending on r</li></ul>	ts long	
hind legs. (Kafr El-S	heikh 2022)	(
10. Hopping of the jerboa in zigzag patterns to run away from dange	er is	
considered as a structural adaptation.		(
11. The spinal cord is the main control center of the body, which help	ps carry	
messages from and to the brain.		(
12. The heart and eyes are connected to the brain through blood ve	ssels that	
transmit information in the form of electrical impulses.		(
13. The large ears of jerboa is an example of structural adaptation.		(
14. The habitat of the jerboa is similar to that of the polar bear.		(
15. The tongue is the sensory organ responsible for taste, which ser	nds messa	ages
to the brain to be processed, then identifying the food type.		(
Write the scientific term of each of the following :	granting.	
1. A group of different animals that look for their preys at night.	(	)
2. A desert rodent with a small body, large ears and long hind legs.	(	)
3. A property by which a bat can locate its prey insects through		
the sound reflected from them.	(	)
4. An animal that can turn its head backwards, and has a bowl-shap	oed	
face and large eyes. (Giza 2022/Cairo 202	23) <b>(</b>	)
<ol><li>A system that controls all the body functions, and nerves are one</li></ol>	I may sell that	
of its parts. (Cairo 202	22) <b>(</b>	)
<ol><li>6. The organ responsible for processing information transmitted to it</li></ol>	t. (	)
<ol><li>7. An organ composed of a group of nerves located in the backbone</li></ol>		
and sends messages from and to the brain.	(	)
<ol><li>8. Organs include the eyes, nose, ears, tongue and skin, and they r</li></ol>		
information from the surroundings and send it to the brain.		
9. A type of nerves in the sensory organs that is responsible for		
receiving information from the environment.		
는 이용하는 눈으로 한빛했다. '로 11일 1일 전에 되었는 점점 전에 맞은 이렇게 되었다면 하면 사람들이 되었다는 가는 사람들이 되었다면 하는데 그렇게 되었다면 보다는 것이다. 그런데 보다는 그리고 하는데 그리고 있다면 살아 없는데 그렇게 되었다면 하는데 그렇게 되었다면 보다 되었다면 하는데 그렇게 되었다면 그렇게 그렇게 그렇게 되었다면 그렇게 되었다면 그렇게	The body	
reactions. (Sharkia 2022/Luxor 202	23) <b>(</b>	) 
Complete the following sentences :	Semeran	1, -
1. Echolocation is used by some animals such as and	15/.50 616	
2. The brain is connected to a group of nerves that passes through	the backb	one
which is known as the		

3	. Hopping of the Egyptian jerboa in zigzag patterns is considered as aadaptation.					
4	. Owls can detect the places of their preys by using the sharp senses	s of				
	and	(Cairo 202				
5	An owl can see everywhere by turning its in all directions, while a chameleon can see everywhere by moving its in opposite directions.					
6	. The presence of hair on a jerboa's feet and toes is a adaptation.					
7	If you see a cat, you have received this information through the sensory receptors in your, then the nerves send a signal to your to identify it.					
8	. The Egyptian jerboa and the fennec fox have an excellent sense of where both of them have large	·,				
9	. The Egyptian jerboa has long to help it jump for long distar	nces, and it	t			
10	. When hearing an alarm ring, the sensory receptors that are found i send a message through a network of nerves to the which what to do to avoid danger.					
11	. When the Egyptian jerboa is in danger, it starts to run away, this ac in a very short time called the					
3	Correct the underlined words :					
1.	. The <u>digestive</u> system delivers messages through a network of nerves around all body parts.	(	)			
2	. The long hind legs of jerboa are considered as behavioral adaptation	on.				
	(Damitta 2022)		)			
3	. The spinal cord passes through the mouth.	(	)			
4	. The organ that is responsible for receiving, processing and respond	ding to				
	information is the heart.	(	)			
5	. A jerboa's feet and toes are covered with <u>feathers</u> .	<b>(</b>	)			
6		<b>(</b>				
7	. When your hand touches the spines of cactus plant, you move it away slowly.	<b>(</b>	)			
Ω	. Tongue is the sensory organ that is responsible for <u>smelling</u> sour le	S. Vigue ha				
0	. Torigue is the sensory organ that is responsible for sinelling source	(	)			
Ω	. When a bat sends a sound against a wall, it returns to it. This phen	will warm in	,			
9	is called camouflage.	(	1			
	odilod <u>dariiodilago.</u>	<b>,</b>	···)			
			Ŀ			

	. Animals that live in hot regions become active at night.
2	. Owls have bowl-shaped faces.
3	. Bats can catch insects in the dark. (Sharkia 2023)
4	. Owl is a nocturnal animal.
5	. The Egyptian jerboa can jump for long distances.
6	. The presence of hair on the Egyptian jerboa's feet and toes.
7	. The Egyptian jerboa's ears play a very important role in its survival.
3 V	Vhat happens if ?
1	. Bats lose the ability to hear by using echolocation property.
2	. Owls cannot turn their heads in all directions.
3.	Your hand touches the spines of a barbary fig plant.
4.	The Egyptian jerboa hears a snake moves towards it.

Dook at the opposite figure, then answer the questions below : $\Box$
a. What does the figure represent?
2
b. Label the figure :
1 2 3
c. Complete :
Number () is found inside the backbone of the human body.
Number () represents the main control center in the human body.
3. Number () spreads all around the human body parts.
O Arrange the following sentences according to how the body parts of Egyptian
jerboa act to avoid danger:
() The brain alerts the jerboa's legs to start moving.
() The brain processes the message telling there is a danger.
() A jerboa hears a snake moving towards it.
() The jerboa jumps in zigzag paths to run away from the danger.
() The sensory receptors that found in jerboa's ears send a message to the brain.

## **LESSON THREE**

## Activity 7

## **How the Nervous System Works**

- ▶ Choose the correct answer from those between brackets:
  - 1. The nervous system gathers information about what is going on inside and outside the body and sends this information to the ....... (blood vessels brain)
  - 2. The nervous system is connected by ...... that transmit messages around the body. (muscles nerves)

#### **Functions of the nervous system:**

- 1. It gathers information through the sensory organs like the eyes, ears and skin.
- 2. It makes sense of (translates) these information through the brain.
- 3. It tells the body what to do according to these information.

#### **Example:**

When the ears pick up sound waves coming from a chirping bird.

The nerves in the ears send a message to the brain, which translates these sound waves.

Then, the brain sends a message to the body about what to do, such as turn to look for the bird on a tree.



#### **Notes**

- 1. Some messages, called "reflexes", are so fast that you cannot realize it such as moving your hand away when touching a very hot cup of tea.
- 2. Other messages are sent from and to the brain automatically, like the signal to breathe.

# 雷

## Check your understanding

- Complete the following sentences:
  - 1. The nervous system sends information through ...... to the ...... to be processed.
  - 2. Collecting information about what happens inside and outside the body is one of the functions of the ...... system.

transmit muscles

pick up ينقل chirping عضلات reflexes يلتقط رقزقة

ردود الفعل المنعكسة

#### **Describing the Nervous System** Activity 8

- From the previous activity, we conclude that :
  - The parts of the nervous system work together to:
    - Sense the environment by sensory organs (such as eyes, nose, mouth ... etc.).
    - Process the information to decide the best action by brain.
    - Send messages to the body parts by nerves to react to these information.
  - Without all of the parts of the nervous system, the person might not receive, send or react to the information.



## Check your understanding

Read the sentences that describe the nervous system, then write the correct term from the word bank in each blank:

brain - reflexes - nerves - spinal cord - sensory receptors.

- 1. The .....is like the command center for your body.
- 2. The big nerve that passes through the backbone is called the .....
- 3. Messages are carried by ...... to and from the brain.
- 4. Messages sent by the nervous system that are often so fast that you do not think about them are called .....
- 5. The ...... are the nerves that lie in different places of the body and are responsible for receiving information from the environment.

In the Assessment Book: Try to answer:

Self-Assessment (8)

process

receive بعالج

111 يستقبل

## **Exercises on Lesson 3**

11-		-	-4-	-
U	ıa	ers	sta	no

O Apply

Higher Thinking Skills

1	C	hoose the correct answer:	01-14
•	1.	Your sensation of hot weather depe	ends on sensory receptors in the
		a. eyes. b. nose.	c. ears. d. skin.
	2.	Recognizing thunder and lightning a. hearing and sight. c. hearing and touch.	depends on the senses of b. sight and smell. d. hearing and taste.
	3.	represents	ong light rays fall on them suddenly
		a. inhalation.	b. reflex.
		c. countershading.	d. camouflage.
	4.	The nervous system gather information then process them by	ation from the environment through and
		a. brain - nerves.	b. nerves – sensory organs.
		c. sensory organs – brain.	d. spinal cord – brain.
	5	following statements explains the sthis situation?	e when you heard the doorbell. Which of the sequence of messages inside your body in
		a. Ears —→ brain —→ hand.	
		c. Brain ——→ ears ——→ hand.	
	6	You pass the football to a player in statements explains the sequence situation?	your team. Which of the following of messages inside your body in this
		<ul> <li>a. Feet — → nerves — → brain.</li> <li>c. Nerves — → feet — → brain.</li> </ul>	
	7	If you smell smoke from something to move away fast. This means that this situation.	burning nearby, then you realized you had there is an integration between thein (Alexandria 2022)
		<ul><li>a. digestive system and respiratory</li><li>b. digestive system and nervous sy</li><li>c. respiratory system and nervous</li></ul>	/stem
		d. nervous system and urinary syst	
	8	그는 사람들은 것 같아 이 지나는 사람들이 가는 것이 있는 그 그를 위해서 하는 것이 하는 것이 그를 사용하는 것이 있다면 있다면 있다면 하는 것이 있는 것이 되었다. 그는 사람들은 그 전에	tance of the nervous system in mammals,
	J	except	
	1	a. gathering information.	
	1	b. pushing blood through blood ves	ssels.
		c. sending signals to the body parts	
		d. translating information.	

2	2 Put (✓) or (X) :	
-	1. The brain sends automatic signals so that we can breathe.	( I) that hills
•	2. Blinking when something becomes near to your eyes is an examp	ole
	of reflexes.	( 2) When vo
-	3. Parts of the nervous system work together to gather and process	information,
	then send signals.	
Ö	<ul> <li>4. Your fingers send signals to the brain to distinguish between smo- rough objects.</li> </ul>	oth and
	5. Sensory organs are responsible for processing information.	( )
Ĭ	6. The function of the digestive system is distinguishing between hor	t and cold
Ĭ	things.	( )
	7. The nerves inside the body connect all parts of the nervous system	together. ( )
	diaga acvisió en la	Spinal oc
3	Write the scientific term of each of the following:	
-	1. It delivers messages between the spinal cord and different body of	and the same of th
	Can recognize the sounds of different musical instruments.	
Ĭ	<ul> <li>2. The organs that receive information from the surrounding environs</li> </ul>	)
-	3. The sensory organ that can distinguish between sharp and rough	inad adT C =
		)
	4. A sense by which you can recognize the sour taste of lemon. (	)
	5. They are messages sent by the nervous system that are often so	fast that you
	cannot realize them.	nigs ed I f)
4	Complete the following sentences :	to the state of th
1	1. The is the organ that sends information to the brain when	you smell
	a perfume.	
d	2. The spinal cord is a big that passes through the	of the human
	body, construct galwollots the following sentences, who	in to look at the
	3. If you come near your dog, its nose sends a message through the alerting it that you are coming.	e nerves to its
9	4. When you touch a very hot object, your hand moves away quickly known as	, this action is (Giza 2022)
	5. When you hear a train horn, in the ears send a message a network of nerves to reach the	through
	6. The is the organ that is responsible for gathering surroun while the is the organ that is responsible for gathering difference or the control of the contr	ding sounds, ferent odors.
(	7. When an owl hears the sound of a prey, sensory receptors in the	send
	information through nerves to the to be processed.	2. When yo
9	8. When someone cannot hear clearly, this means that he has a pro	blem in his
	sense.	

5	Correct	the	under	lined	words	:
2	Conce	LIIC	unacı	iiiica	****	•

- The <u>muscles</u> in the sensory organs within your body are responsible for receiving information from the surrounding environment.

  (......)
- 2. When your eyes are closed, you can distinguish between your brother's voice and your friend's voice, depending on your sense of sight. (......)
- 3. The <u>spinal cord</u> is responsible for processing sound waves coming through ears.

### 6 Cross out the odd word:

- 1. Smell Taste Eyes Hearing. (......)
- 2. Eyes Nose Skin Taste.
- 3. Spinal cord Lungs Nerves Brain. (.....

### Give reasons for :

- 1. Humans can recognize the sounds of different musical instruments.
- 2. The brain has an important function in the nervous system.

## 8 What happens if ...?

- 1. The spinal cord became absent from the components of the nervous system.
- 2. Sensory receptors related to the eyes stopped sending messages to the brain.

## Look at the following figures, then complete the following sentences:



Part (1)



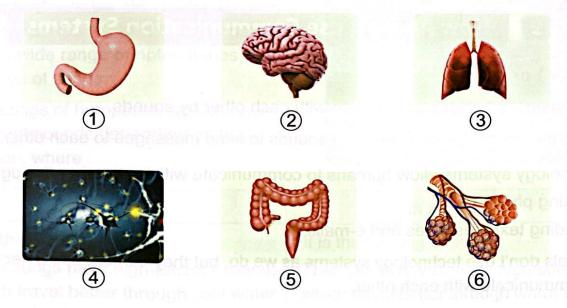
Part (2)



Part (3)

- 1. These body parts belong to the ..... system.
- 2. When you touch a freezing bottle of water, part number ........ in your hand sends a message through part number ....... to reach part number ....... which tells you that this bottle is very cold.

You have some pictures of different parts of the human body. Write down the organ number in front of the system to which it belongs in the following table:



System	Organ	1 ខ្វាក
1. Digestive system :	A Sallorii oleligan tedi solgalar gi	evil etaA *
2. Respiratory system :	alsu	of individ
3. Nervous system:	fants within a colony have differ	• Groups o

## LESSON FOUR

#### **How Animals use Communication Systems** Activity 9

- ▶ Put (√) or (x):
  - 1. Humans only can communicate with each other by sounds.
  - 2. Some animals produce different sounds to send messages to each other. (
- Technology systems allow humans to communicate with each other through:
  - Making phone calls.
  - Sending text messages and e-mails.
- Animals don't use technology systems as we do, but they can still use other systems to communicate with each other.
- We will study ants and humpback whales as examples of these animals.

#### Ants:

- Ants live in colonies that contain thousands of individuals.
- · Groups of ants within a colony have different roles, where they have developed systems that help them divide their work among themselves, so there are nurse ants, scout ants and soldier ants.



### How do groups of ants communicate with each other?

When the food is low, nurse ants send smelly messages to scout ants which are responsible for locating food.

The scout ants respond by sending a smelly message to alert the ants where to find the food.



The soldier ants also use smelly messages to communicate if there is danger nearby.

calls scout ants colonies

مستعمرات

individual النمل الكشاف

nurse ants أنظمة متطورة developed systems soldier ants فرد alert وظيفة / دور

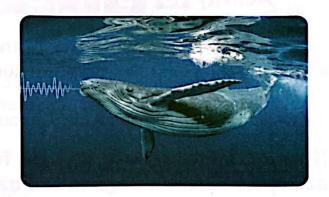
nearby عاملات النمل تحذر / تنذر

responsible for

فريب / مجاور

#### **Humpback whales:**

- Humpback whales sing under water to communicate with each other, where they sing a wide range of notes (tones) and a series of songs.
- · The songs of humpback whales have different sounds depending on the season, where:



In winter	In summer
- It is the mating season.	- It is the feeding season.
<ul> <li>Their songs have high-pitched sounds which travel better through cold water.</li> </ul>	

#### **Notes**

- 1. High-pitched sounds such as the sharp voice of a woman.
- 2. Low-pitched sounds such as the rough voice of a man.



## Check your understanding

#### Complete:

- 1. When the food is low, ..... ants send ..... to ...... ants which are responsible for locating food.
- 2. The ...... ants use smelly messages if there is danger nearby.

## ▶ Choose the correct answer : Islands and this published noman b

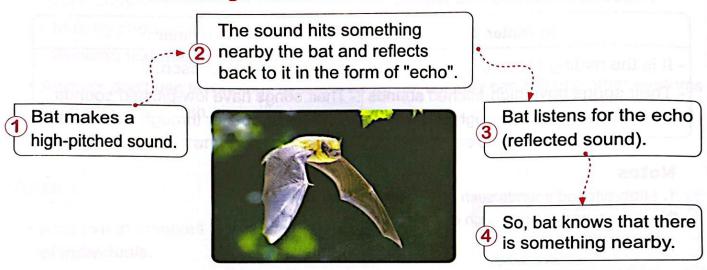
- 1. The rough sound of humpback whale is ...... pitched sound.
  - c. soft a. high b. low
- 2. The songs of humpback whales have a ...... pitch in winter.
  - a. higher b. lower c. rough

## Activity 10 S T E M in Action

## **Technology Inspired by Nature**

- Bats use sound in some purposes such as :
  - Communicating with each other.
  - Getting information about their surroundings using their hearing sense.

# How does the bat use its ears for echolocation to get information about its surroundings in the dark?



### **Bat Inspired technology:**

- Scientists have been inspired (get benefited) by the adaptation of bat echolocation to find ways to help **blind people** detect their surroundings, where :

Scientists have created a **special cane** that emits a high-pitched sound just like bats do.

As a blind person is walking with this special cane, an echo of this high-pitched sound is picked up by this special cane.

The echo is turned into vibrations that the person can feel with his thumb.

The vibrations of the special cane tell the blind person the direction of the obstacles and objects around him.



#### Note

Humans cannot hear the high-pitched sounds produced either from bats or the special cane of blind people.

In this table we can summarize the similarities and differences between the special cane of blind person and bat echolocation.

#### Special cane of blind person

Bat

#### **Similarities**

- The special cane of blind person and bats emit a high-pitched sound that bounces off objects as an echo.
- This special cane and bats receive the echo that can tell how far away objects are.

#### **Differences**

- This special cane picks up an echo from the sound it emits and changes it into a vibration that can tell the blind person where objects are around him.
- Bats pick up an echo from the sound they emit but they don't change it into vibrations.



## Check your understanding

- ▶ Put (√) or (x):
  - 1. Bats make low-pitched sound and then listen for an echo.
  - 2. Bats can change the echo into vibrations.

1	,
(6	)
2.3	,

#### **Review on Concept (1.2)**

To review this concept look at the Assessment Book "Part 2: Final Revision".

In the Assessment Book:

#### Try to answer:

- Self-Assessment (9)
- Model Exam on Concepts (1.1) & (1.2)

differences تشابهات similarities

119 اختلافات

# **Exercises on Lesson 4**

Understand

O Apply

Higher Thinking Skills

Choose the correct a	nswer :			
1. Sending smelly me	essages when the	ere is a shortage o	of food is the role	
of	3000 021300000	a batta	d coldier ente	
a. queen ants. b.		c. scout ants.	d. soldier ants.	
2. Locating food is the		1	al and the same of	
a. queen ants. b.				
<ol><li>3. Alarming the colony</li></ol>				
a. queen ants. b.				
4. Humpback whales				
a. winter b.				
<ol><li>5. Sense organs colle</li></ol>	ct information ar		for processing a	
understanding.			(Port Said 2	022
a. hands b.	legs	c. brain	d. stomach	
6. Bats use their				
a. nose b.	tongue	c. eyes	d. ears (Gharbia 2	022
7. Echolocation in som	ne animals is the	use of pitche	ed sounds for finding fo	od.
a. medium b.	low o	c. very low	d. high	
8use echoloca	tion by bouncing	high-pitched sour	ds in the air.	
a. Bats b.	Dolphins o	c. Whales	d. Snakes (Alex. 2	023
9. The echo is turned i	into that a	blind man can fee	in his thumb while	
holding his special of	cane.			
a. vibrations b.	light	c. heat	d. water	
10. The blind person's c	ane and en	nit a high-pitched s	ound that bounces off	
objects forming an e	cho.			
a. lizards b.	polar bears o	bull sharks	d. bats	
11. Songs of humpback	whales in winter	r are characterized	d by each of the follow	ing
except				
a. having high-pitche	ed sounds. b	travelling better	through cold water.	
c. having soft sound	s. d	I. having low-pitch	ed sounds.	
12. All the following sen	tences describe	humpbacks' life, e	except	
a. they can commun	icate in cold and	warm water.		
b. they mating in win				
c. they have a weak				
d. they communicate	e with each other	through sounds.		

Choose from column (B) what suits it in column	(A):
--	------

(A)	s send smally messages to see (B) its.
<ol> <li>Nurse ants</li> <li>Scout ants</li> <li>Soldier ants</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>a. are responsible for reproduction and laying eggs.</li> <li>b. are responsible for warning from dangers.</li> <li>c. are responsible for locating food.</li> <li>d. are responsible for sending smelly messages when the amount of food decreases.</li> </ul>
	TOTAL VALUE OF THE PARTY AND A STATE OF THE PA

1	2	3

F	Put	(V)	or	(X)
	rut	( "	O.	(,,

1.	It is impossible to design technology inspired by the adaptations of some livin	g
	organisms around us. Also only all agnitude and buode no item robust to got (	

- 2. A special cane is invented to help a person who has lost the sense of hearing.
- 3. The sound pitch from a blind person's cane is too high for humans to hear. (
- Echo is turned into light that a blind man can feel while holding his special cane.
- 5. Bats have the ability to change echo into vibrations just as the canes of blind persons do.
- 6. Animals use technological systems as we do.7. Animals communicate with each other by using different senses.
- 8. Humpback whales communicate with each other through flashing. (
- 9. Humpback whales produce more than one type of songs. (Giza 2023) (
- 10. Humpback whales can sing under water. ( )
- 11. Sense organs can decode the information that is sent by the brain. (

### Correct the underlined words :

1. Groups of ants within a colony have similar roles.	d (
2. Scout ants are responsible for alarming the colony in danger.	a(ad)
3. Humpback whales have similar sounds according to the season.	
4 Humphack whales produce low-pitched sounds in winter.	(

## Write the scientific term of each of the following:

- A season in which the humpback whale produces high-pitched sound.

  (
- 2. A season in which the humpback whale produces low-pitched sound.

	3.	Small living organisms that live in colonies and communicate with each other by smelly messages to perform different roles.	()
	4.	A group of ants which is responsible for sending smelly messages when there is a shortage of food.  (Alex. 2023)	()
	5.	Pitched sounds which travel through cold water better than through warm water.	()
	6.	Pitched sounds which travel through warm water better than throug cold water.	
-	7.	Sense organ that can detect sound energy.	()
-	8.	Sense organ that can detect light energy. (Giza 2022)	()
-	9.	A living organism that can fly and depend on the echolocation proper	erty
		to get information about its surroundings in the dark.	()
-	10.	A simple tool (device) used by blind people to walk safely.	()
6	C	omplete the following sentences :	
Ċ	1.	Bats and the special cane of blind people are similar in usingproperty to locate objects.	man 2 d
-	2.	A group of ants sends messages to communicate with each	ch other.
P		Ants use their sense of to communicate with each other.	
		Ants within a colony are divided into several groups such as ants and ants, where each group do a specific re	
-	5.	Humpback whales communicate with each other by using the sense	e of
		, where they sing a wide range of and a series of	of
			(Minia 2023)
	6.	In winter months, the songs of humpback whales have pit because these sounds travel better through water.	ched sound,
	7.	In months, the songs of humpback whales havesound, because these sounds travel better through warm water.	pitched
	8.	Humans can communicate with each other where ears of human de energy and eyes of human detect energy.	etect
	9.	Ants are similar to the tree in that both of them send a sm messages for communication.	elly
	10	The echo that is picked up by the special cane of a blind person isthat the person can feel them with his thumb.	turned into

Give reasons for :
1. The nurse ants send smelly messages to scout ants.
2. The soldier ants use smells in their communication.
3. The songs of humpback whales have high-pitched sounds during winter months.
4. Humpback whales sing different songs.
5. The echo that is picked up by the special cane of blind people is turned into vibrations.
6. The blind people cannot hear the sound that emits from their special canes.
What happens if ?
1. The smell sense of ants becomes weak. The smell sense of ants becomes weak.
2. The amount of food in the ants colony decreases. ☐ sodes asity of an T
3. There is a danger near to an ants colony.
4. High-pitched sound that is produced by the blind person's cane hits an object.
5. Bats cannot use echolocation property.
6. There is a wall in front of a blind person uses his special cane.
7. The hearing sense of humpback whales becomes weak.

# **Model Exam** 1





1	(A) Choose the correct answer:		(5 marks)
	<ol> <li>Senses that can distinguish between a. taste and sight.</li> <li>sight and hearing.</li> </ol>	n milk and water are b. smell and hearin d. taste and hearing	g.
	<ul><li>2. Bats can fly without hitting walls beca. hear the echo reflected from them b. touch them.</li><li>c. see them clearly at night.</li><li>d. smell them.</li></ul>		
	<ul><li>3. When your hand touches the spines</li><li>a. one minute.</li><li>c. more than one hour.</li></ul>	of a cactus plant, it is b. two minutes. d. less than one see	
	<ul> <li>4. Brain, nerves and sensory receptors a <ul> <li>a. only sensory receptors work individually.</li> <li>b. only the brain works individually.</li> <li>c. they work together with each other d. they work separately from each of</li> </ul> </li> <li>(B) Give a reason for:  The Egyptian jerboa has long hind in the each of t</li></ul>	idually. r. :her.	system, where
2	(A) Correct the underlined words :	era eta da garta eta garta eta da garta eta alea	( 5 marks)
	1. When you hear the fire alarm, your	eyes send a signal to th	ne brain. ()
	<ol> <li>The <u>spinal cord</u> is responsible for procoming through ears.</li> </ol>	ocessing the information	on ()
	3. The dog has sharp senses of smell a	and <u>taste</u> .	()
	4. The sense of sight in bats is stronge	r than that in owls.	()
	(B) What happens if ?		
	Owls cannot turn their heads in all d	irections.	7 The hearing se
	insy the passes and a		

(A) Write the scientific term of each of th		(5 marks)
<ol> <li>A living organism that can fly and deper information about its surroundings in the</li> </ol>		ation property to get ()
2. A season in which the humpback whale	produces low-pito	ched sound.
		()
3. Sense organ that can detect light energ	ıy.	()
4. A group of messages sent by nervous s cannot realize them.	Auco au un sigui	()
(B) Mention two devices that humans car surroundings, where their ideas are in And then mention the name of these t	spired from some	The state of the s
Devices	Inspired from	the adaptation of
1.	Stinos:	oup aris rawano
	10	A Section 1 Section 1 Section 2 Sect

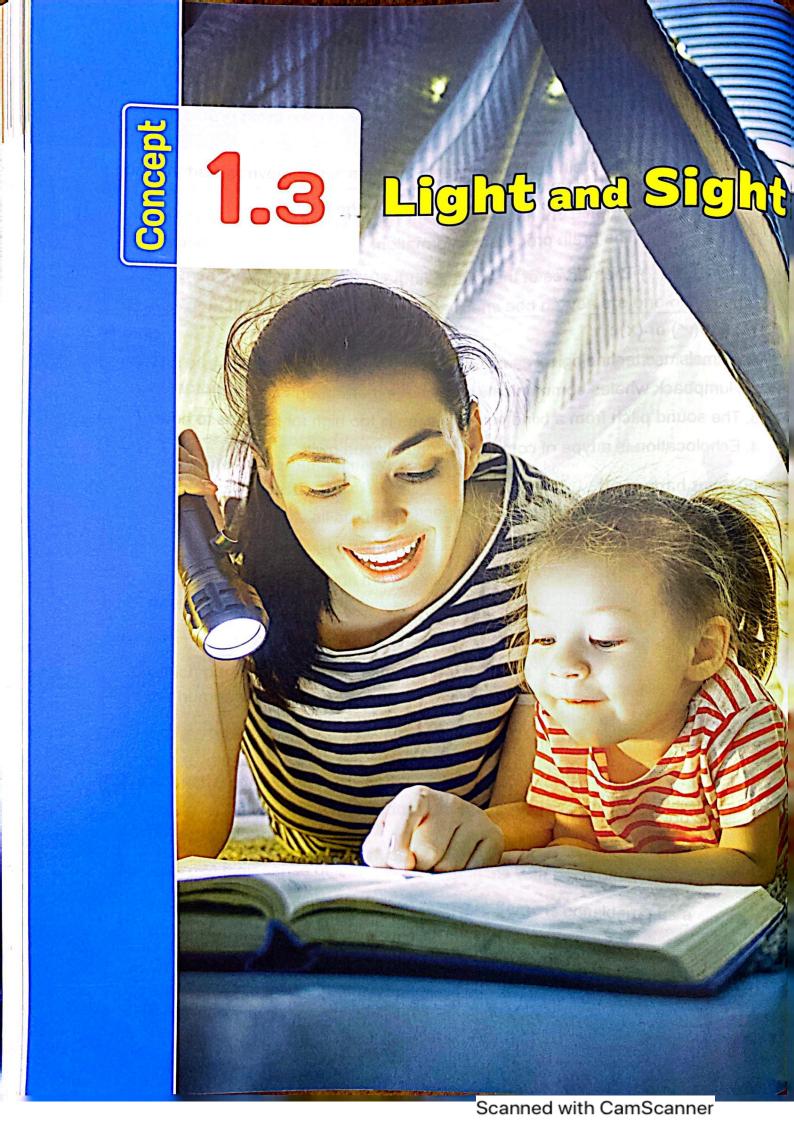
# Model Exam 2

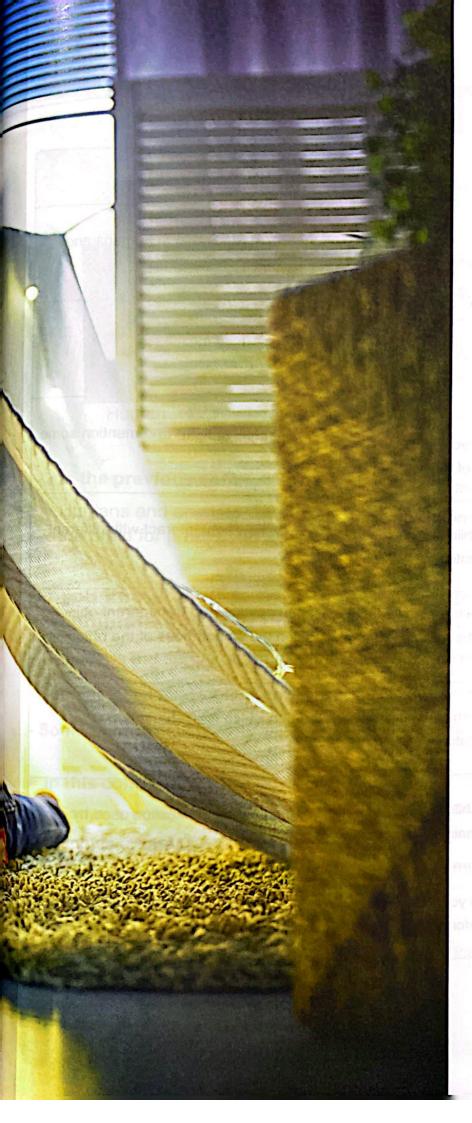
# on Concept (1.2)

Total	mark
1	5

1 (A) Write the scientific term of each of the following:	(5 marks)
1. The time taken by an organism's body to respond to different ir	
around it.	()
2. A sense by which you can recognize the sour flavor of vinegar.	
3. A system that controls all the body functions and nerves are on	ne of its parts.
4. The organ which receives and processes the messages sent fit receptors that are found in a jerboa's ears.	
(B) Look at the opposite figure that shows the structure of the human nervous system, then answer the questions :	
Which part spreads all around the human body?  Nerves	
Which part is found inside the backbone of the human body?	
3. Which part represents the main control center in the human body?	
(A) Complete the following sentences:	(5 marks)
The is the organ that sends information to the brain when the scent of a perfume.	en you smell
2. Ants use their sense of to communicate with each other.	(
<ol><li>Hopping of the Egyptian jerboa in zigzag patterns is considere adaptation.</li></ol>	ed as a
4. Owls can detect the places of their preys by using the super seand	enses of

(B) Order the following statements which explain how the brain processes information :		
() The brain sends a signal to the muscles to move to start the	race	
() Hearing the whistle sound to start the race.		
() The brain processes information.		
() The nerves of the ears send a signal to the brain.		
(A) Put (V) or (X):	5 mari	ks)
1. Animals use technological systems as we do.	(	)
2. Humpback whales communicate with each other through flashing.	(	)
3. The sound pitch from a blind person's cane is too high for humans to hear.	(	)
4. Echolocation is a type of communication between owls.	(	)
(B) What happens if ?  The amount of food in ants colony decreases.		





### **Learning outcomes**

By the end of this concept, your child will be able to:

- Describe how light transfers energy across distances.
- Develop a model that describes how the behavior of light enables the eye to see objects.
- Explain how adaptations help some animals gather information in the dark.
- Argue, using evidence that light allows for the transfer of information through systems communication.

## Key vocabulary

- Feature
- Light
- Matter
- Opaque
- Eye pupil
- Reflection
- Transparent
- Transferring information

## Notes For Parents On Concept [1.3]

Lessons	Activities	What you should do with your child
	Activity 1	Discuss with your child how the vision process occurs in humans and animals.
1	Activity 2	Discuss with your child how humans and fishing cats see things in low-light places.
	Activity 3	Explain to your child the meaning of "sources of light" and mention some examples of them.
	Activity 4	Let your child do an experiment to know how light interact with different types of materials.
2	Activity 5	Discuss with your child the meaning of opaque and transparent objects, and how the reflected light depends on the smoothness of the reflecting surface.
3	Activity 6	Discuss with your child the way through which firefly beetles communicate.
	Activity 7	Let your child classify the different types of communication used by humans, animals or both of them.
4	Activity 8	Explain to your child the meaning of "code" that humans can use to transfer information.

## **LESSON ONE**

## Activity 1

## **Can You Explain?**





- In the previous concept, you have learned that animals have senses like humans.
- Humans and animals have nerves that send information from the sense organs to the brain for processing information.

## Do you know what is the organ that is affected by light in humans and animals and how they can see things in low-light places?

- The eye is the sense organ of sight that is affected by light in humans and animals.
- Humans need more light in low-light places to see clearly.
- Some animals such as fishing cat can see better than humans in the low-light places.

#### In this concept, we will study:

- · Some animals that can hunt in the low-light places.
- · Light is a form of energy.
- Some special structures in the eyes of some animals.
- Reflection of light.
- · How we can see different objects around us.
- How some living organisms use light in communication.

#### **Hunting with Night Vision** Activity 2

## ▶ Look at the opposite picture, then put (√) or (x):

- 1. Eye is the sense organ that humans depend on ) to see the surroundings.
- 2. Presence of sound is important for humans to see the surroundings clearly.



### **Night vision in humans:**

- Human eyes need more light to see well in the low-light places.
- Without more light humans would need a device known as "night vision goggles" to see in the dark.



Night vision goggles

#### Night vision in animals:

The structure of eyes of some animals help them see in the dark such as the fishing cat.

#### The fishing cat

- It is a wild cat and considered as one of nocturnal animals that hunts for food at night.
- The fishing cat's eyes seem to glow in the dark because:
  - 1- It has a mirror-like membrane at the back of its eyes.



- 2- When the light enters the fishing cat's eyes, it bounces (reflects) off this membrane, allowing its eyes to collect more light.
- This structural adaptation of the fishing cat's eyes, is found in all cats and allow them to have excellent night vision to hunt in the low-light places.

## The ability of humans and nocturnal animals to see in the dark:

Points of comparison	Humans	Nocturnal animals  Big eye	
Size of the eye :	Small eye		
• Eye pupil :	Opens narrower	Opens wider (to allow more light enter their eyes)	
	eye pupil  Human eye	eye pupil  Cat eyes	



Some nocturnal animals can see in the weakest light levels, but in complete darkness they depend on other senses such as hearing and smelling that help them to hunt their preys and to avoid their predators.

#### ▶ What happens if ... ?

The fishing cat eyes have no mirror-like membrane.

It cannot see clearly and hunt at nights.

## Check your understanding

Put (√) or (x)	$t(\checkmark)$ or $(x)$	or (x	(1)	Put	
----------------	--------------------------	-------	-----	-----	--

- 1. The type of adaptation in the fishing cat to see in the low-light places is a behavioral adaptation.
- 2. All cats have a mirror-like membrane in their eyes.

#### Choose the correct answer:

If the human eyes contain a mirror-like membrane, so his eyes ..... in the low-light places.

a. gather low amount of light

b. need a night vision goggles

c. appear black

d. appear bright

eye pupil

wider بؤبؤ العين/إنسان العين

133 أوسع

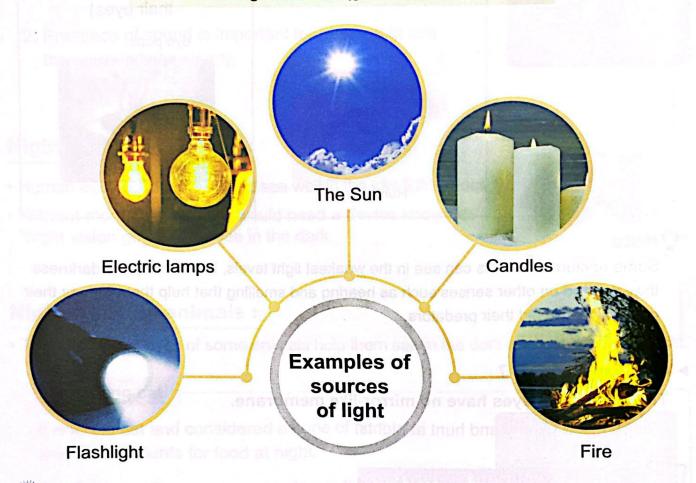
## Activity 3

## What Do You Already Know About Light and Sight?

## Sources of light:

#### A source of light:

It is something that emits (gives off) its own light.



### **Note**

There are other objects that don't emit light, but they reflect the light falling on them, so they are not considered as sources of light such as:



The moon (reflects the sunlight)



The mirror (reflects the flashlight)

#### How we see:

When the source of light emits its own light rays they fall on objects, the light rays bounce off these objects and reach our eyes, so we can see these objects, as shown in the picture below:



#### From the previous explanation we conclude that:

#### Light:

It is a visible form of energy that travels in the form of waves.



In complete darkness, we can't see anything because without light bouncing off the objects into our eyes, everything will look black.

To detect the place of a table in a completely dark roo

# 的門

## Check your understanding

▶ Complete :

There are many sources of light such as ....., , ....., and

▶ Put (√) or (×):

- 1. The light falling on objects bounces back to reach the eye so that we can see these objects.
- 2. The moon is considered a source of light, so it appears bright at night. (

In the Assessment Book:
Try to answer:
Self-Assessment 10

bounce off يرته rays

## **Exercises on Lesson 1**

Understand

O Apply

Higher Thinking Skills

	Choose the correct answer:	
,	1. Which of the following organs are wo	rking together for seeing different
	objects?	(Kafr El-Sheikh 2022
	a. Nose and brain.	b. Eyes and brain.
	c. Ears and brain.	d. Tongue and brain.
,	2. Humans have eyes than noctur	rnal animals.
	a. bigger	b. smaller
	c. stronger	d. sharper
	3. The pupils of human eyes open	that of nocturnal animals.
	a. typical to	b. narrower than
	c. wider than	d. similar to
	4. The wide eye pupils of fishing cat, all	ows amount of light to enter its eyes
	than those of human eyes.	3
	a. little b. large	c. very small d. small
	5. Nocturnal animals depend on all the f	following senses to find out their preys
	at night, except	
	9	b. hearing sense.
	c. taste sense.	d. smelling sense.
	6. The mirror-like membrane of the fishing	
	a. inside the stomach.	
		d. at the back of the eye.
		oig amount of light to see in the dark?
	a. Both humans and cats.	b. Neither humans nor cats.
	c. Cats only.	d. Humans only.
	8. To detect the place of a table in a complete	
	a. sight sense.	b. touch sense.
	c. taste sense.	d. hearing sense.
	9. If someone walking in a dark place will person may	ithout hitting anything around him, so this
	<ul> <li>a. have a big ability to taste.</li> </ul>	<ul> <li>b. have a big ability to breathe.</li> </ul>
	c. have a big ability to smell.	d. wear a night vision goggles.
	10. The character that helps the fishing ability	cat to hunt a prey at night, is its
	a. to see the sunlight.	b. of poor night vision.
	c. to digest its prey easily.	d. of excellent night vision.

11. The eyes of fish	ning cats glow at nig	ght, because their ey	es
a. emit their own		b. can reflect lig	
c. are small in size	ze. b of mul avalla	d. have narrow	pupils.
12. The sight proce	ss occurs as follow	/S	
a. light falls on th	e eyes, then reflec	ted to the objects.	
		ected into the eyes.	
		cted to the objects.	
	THE RESIDENCE AND THE RESIDENCE OF A SAFETY	eflected into the ears	
13. The function of the function of .		nbrane in the fishing	cat's eyes, looks like
a. night vision go	ggles.	b. radio.	
c. black paper.		d. white paper.	
	it's eyes, the mirrors them toat	r-like membrane is ar night.	important structure
a. sleep		b. breathe	
c. keep their bod	y warm	d. hunt a prey	
15. All the following	things are conside	ered as light sources,	except
a. the Sun.		b. fire.	
c. eyes.		d. the light lamp	O. (Cairo 2022)
16. We can see bo	th the Sun and the	moon, because light	A. The organ that is
a. bounces off be	oth of them.		
b. is emitted from	n both of them.		Sun and the databases
c. bounces off th	e Sun and is emitte	ed from the moon.	a. A bouy mat appre
d. bounces off th	e moon and is emi	tted from the Sun.	
17. The energy wh	ich must present to	make our eyes able	to see the objects
around us is	energy.		(Cairo 2022)
a. sound	b. electric	c. light	d. magnetic
Saim 2023) [	992 01211	seldene that enables	o moi eldisiv ed 1 8 e
Put (✓) or (X):	fondring a source of	flight shame box	Fall Correct the underlin
		rgans of light, not as	
<ol><li>Sight is the sen surroundings.</li></ol>		ns and animals depe	
3. Cats have exce	ellent night vision, w	hile humans are not.	( · ) sound onergy.
		es reflect the light tha	
		resent at the back of	
	other cat species.		( ) objects is the dige
		ts in a completely da	rk room.
		er and reflect any littl	
Dig eyes of fish	ing out anoth to gate		13:

-	8. If the human has a mirror-like membrane at the back of his eyes, he can see clearly in the low-light places.	(	)
	9. The light that enters the human eyes allows him to distinguish between w	/eal	<
Ĭ	and strong sounds.	(	)
	10. The moon is not considered as a light source. (Cairo 2023)	(	)
	11. We can see the moon although it doesn't emit any light.	(	)
3			
	(source of light – mirror-like membrane – more light – bounce off)		
	1. Human eyes need to see clearly in the low-light places.		
	2. All cats have a at the back of their eyes.		
	3. Any object that gives off its own light is called a		
	4. We can see objects when the light rays these objects to our eyes.		
4	Write the scientific term of each of the following :		
	The organ that is affected by light and responsible for sight.		)
	2. A species of wild cats, whose eyes glow at night. (		)
	3. Objects that emit their own light. (	••••••	)
	4. The organ that is responsible for processing information received		
	by eyes, to know and recognize the surroundings. (		)
	5. A body that appears lighted in the sky, but it is not considered		,
	as a source of light. (Giza 2023) (	•••••	)
	6. A tool that the human can depend on to see in the dark. (	•	)
i	7. The structural adaptation that gives fishing cat an excellent night vision.		١
	- ^ - 마루(S)[[설:15] [2]		100
Ĭ	8. The visible form of energy that enables us to see. (Cairo 2023) (		)
E	Correct the underlined words :		
	1. Humans and cats are <u>similar</u> in their seeing ability at night. (		)
(	2. The energy that helps humans and animals see, is the		
(	sound energy. (Minia 2022) (		
1	3. The moon is one of the light sources in the sky. (Giza 2023) (		
(	The system that works with the eyes of living organisms for seeing objects is the digestive system.  (		
4	5. Cats eyes glow at night due to the presence of a mirror-like membrane		
(	at the <u>front</u> of their eyes. (		)

6. Sound is a visible form of energy that bounces off objects into ou	
	()
7. Eyes send messages to the heart for processing information.	
8. In a completely dark room, everything looks red due to the abser	
a Pand the compateness are	if ( <u>.a</u>
Complete the following sentences :	
1. The fishing cat can hunt at night depending on the excellent sens	se of
2. The fishing cat can hunt at night due to the bouncing off	energy.
3. The eyes of fishing cat have a mirror-like membrane bounces off this is considered as a adaptation.	
4. Eyes of human are than eyes of nocturnal animals, and nocturnal animals open than that of human.	d pupils of
5. In complete darkness, nocturnal animals depend on other senses such as and	S ar reflects
6. To see things clearly at night, humans need a source ofanimals can hunt at night depending on their excellent night vision	
<ol> <li>Human can see objects which give off their own light or objects w light.</li> </ol>	/hich
8. Among the objects which give off their own light are the Sun and while and are objects that bounce off light.	1 ApFigure (2 3. Figure (1)
Give reasons for :	ti licti arti
1. The fishing cat's eyes seem to glow in the dark.	
2. Candle is considered as a source of light.	ols on them.
seriuss the nilmor and the exact of unfall haugh materials researched and another the house on the	n, adon 85 ing
What happens if ?	
1. The mirror-like membrane in the fishing cat's eyes is not present	

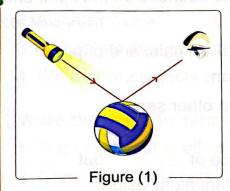
2.	The	moon	can't	reflect	the	sunlight.	

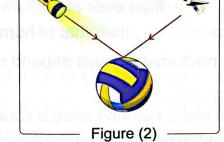
Oross out the odd word :

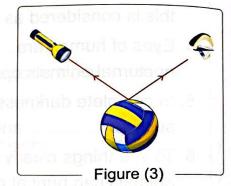
- 1. Flashlight The moon Fire.
- 2. The moon Mirror Candle.

(Minia 2023) (.....

10 Study the following three figures, then put  $(\checkmark)$  or (x):







- 1. Human's eyes can see the ball in figure (3), because the ball emits light.
- 2. Figure (2) is not correct, because human's eyes don't emit light.
- 3. Figure (1) is correct, because the light ray of the flashlight bounces off the ball to the human's eyes.

## **LESSON TWO**

## Activity 4 Light Reflection

<b>▶</b> Choose	the	correct	answer:
-----------------	-----	---------	---------

Which one of the following	ng objects is shing	y and smooth?	
----------------------------	---------------------	---------------	--

- a. Plastic spoon.
- b. Wooden chair.
- c. Mirror.

d. T-shirt.

In this activity, we will do an experiment that shows how light interacts with different types of materials:

Materials: a flashlight – a mirror – a piece of wood – a piece of plastic – a piece of metal – a piece of cloth – paper.

Steps us a topido e	th the (see Figures and ) (ga	Observations
Turn on the flashlight and direct it towards a mirror.	do we	- The mirror reflects most amount of the light.
Turn on the flashlight and direct it towards a piece of wood.	inavalue de la company de la c	- The piece of wood reflects less amount of the light.
3. Repeat the previous step using the other materials.	Opaque object  Opaque object  Opaque Rana en seu essantantes	Walle All Phen angiett -

#### Conclusions:

- 1. Shiny and smooth materials reflect large amount of the light that falls on them, such as the mirror and the piece of metal.
- 2. Rough materials reflect small amount of the light that falls on them, such as the piece of wood, the piece of plastic, the piece of cloth and paper.

## Check your understanding

#### ▶ Put (√) or (x):

- 1. Shiny objects reflect light better than rough objects.
- 2. Wood reflects more light than a mirror does.

( ybad

interact shiny

direct يتفاعل smooth لامع توجیه ناعم

materials rough

مواد خشن

141

## Activity 5 Light Strikes Matter

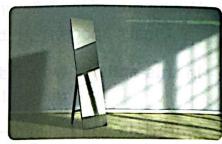
In this activity, we will study what happens to light when it hits different types of matter.

### **Light strikes matter**

Light is a form of energy that travels in straight lines in the form of light waves.

#### When light hits an object :

- Some of the light energy is absorbed by the object's surface.



Light reflection

- Some of the light energy reflects (bounces) off the object's surface.
- Some of the light energy may go through the object.

So, according to the previous explanation, objects can be classified into two groups which are:

#### Opaque objects **Transparent objects** They are objects They are objects that allow light that don't allow light to pass through. to pass through. Opaque object Transparent object - Things can't be seen through them. Things can be seen through them. Examples: Examples: rocks, wood, metals and the human body. air, water, glass windows and lenses.

## Why do you see your body shadow?

Your body is an opaque object that forms shadow, because the light that hits your body either bounces off or is absorbed but no light passes through your body.

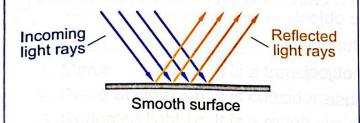


	Accommon to the contract of	processing the same of the processing	STATE OF THE PARTY	Electronic control of the control of	attender to the land to the land		
matter	مادة	shadow	ظل	opaque	معتم	straight	مستقيم
absorb	يمتص	form	صورة	hit / strike	يصدم	transparent	شفاق

► The direction of the reflected light rays depends on the smoothness of the surface, where :

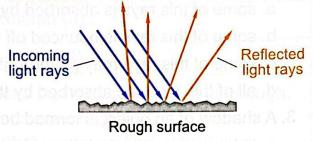
#### **Smooth Surface**

- If the surface is smooth (such as a mirror), the light rays will reflect in one direction with the same angle at which they strike (hit) the object originally.



#### **Rough Surface**

 If the surface is rough (such as a painted surface), the reflected light rays will scatter or diffuse in different directions.



▶ How does light striking matter make it possible for humans and animals to see ?

When light rays strike an object, light reflects (bounces) off this object.

The reflected light travels in a straight line into the eyes.

Special nerves in the eyes send messages to the brain.

The brain interprets the messages as an image of this object.



#### Check your understanding

- ▶ Write the scientific term :
  - 1. Objects that allow light to pass through.
  - 2. Objects that don't allow light to pass through.

(	)

( .....)

In the Assessment Book:

Try to answer:

Self-Assessment (11)

incoming

originally الوارد

scatter / diffuse في الأصل

تفرق / تبعثر

143

# **Exercises on Lesson 2**

Higher Thinking Skills Understand Apply Choose the correct answer : 1. Light travels in ..... lines in the form of waves. b. zigzag d. circular c. straight a. curved 2. When light rays hit an object, all the following sentences are correct, except ..... (Cairo 2022) a. some of this rays is absorbed by the object. b. some of this rays is bounced off the object. c. some of this rays may go through the object. d. all of this rays are absorbed by the object. 3. A shadow of an object is formed because ..... a. light can pass through the object. b. light cannot pass through the object. c. this object is made of glass. d. this object is transparent. 4. Opaque material ..... a. allows light to pass through. b. absorbs some of light that falls on it only. c. reflects some of light that falls on it only. d. absorbs some of light that falls on it and reflects the other. 5. All of the following are transparent objects, except ..... (Cairo 2022) d. air. c. paper. a. glass. b. water. 6. ..... allows most of light to pass through, while ...... don't. d. Glass - wood c. Wood - glass b. Glass - air a. Air - glass 7. Mirror causes falling light rays to ..... a. pass through it. b. reflect at the same angle they strick the mirror. c. reflect in different directions. d. diffuse like that of rough surfaces. 8. Our eyes, ..... a. can see through both opaque and transparent objects.

b. cannot see through both opaque and transparent objects.

c. can see through opaque objects, but not through transparent objects.

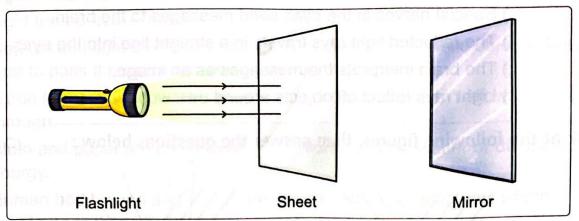
d. can see through transparent objects, but not through opaque objects.

	sheets, one is ma	ade of wood and	I the other is made o	of						
glass,	the glass sheet th	rough the wood	nii ni sieveri i							
7 1000000	THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF THE	Leve and said i the said to								
<ul> <li>b. you cannot see the wood sheet through the glass sheet.</li> <li>c. you can see the wood sheet through the glass sheet.</li> <li>d. light can pass through both sheets.</li> <li>10. Light rays can pass through lenses, so they are made up of</li> </ul>										
						a. wood.	b. paper.	c. glass.	d. metal.	Hold of
Choose from colu	mn (B) what suits	it in column (A)	Spe transaction and							
(A)		(B)	Angugint send of	Irigit - El						
1. Mirror	a. It is a transpar	ent piece that al	lows light to pass the	rough.						
2. Piece of cloth	b. It is considered	d as a source of	light.	mar . S						
3. Reflected light										
4. Lenses d. It is the light that bounces off a reflecting surface.			reflecting surface.	W DAID FOR						
- Because a	e. It is a smooth a	and shiny surfac	e that reflects most of	of falling						
o The surface l	light.									
1viol	2	3	4,at	light c						
Put (✓) or ( <i>x</i> ) :	121322	As the case of the	ICE ACTIVITIES AND ASSESSMENT OF A STOCK	111111111111111111111111111111111111111						
1. Transparent obj	ects include mirro	rs and lenses.		( )						
2. Rough objects t			oth objects.	(c)						
			ht rays at the same	angle						
at which they st			rais and rough hair	and the same of th						
4. Mirror reflects m	nost of incoming lig	ght rays that fall	on it.	( )						
5. The light reflecti				diad(r)						
Write the scientifi	ic term of each of	the following:	leade beaw a socia	soy it						
1. Materials that all	ow light to pass thr	ough.	(Cairo 2022/2023) (	)						
2. Materials that we			(							
3. A type of surface	s that reflects light	in different direc	ctions. (	A-1,A-1,(C)						
Correct the under	lined words :									
1. We see the obje	cts as a result of th	e absorption of l	ight rays into our eye	s.						
Space		.630		M						
2. Opaque material	s include water, gla	ass, air and lense	es. (							
3. Rough objects re										
which they struck										

6	Complete the following sentences:	
	1. Light travels in lines.	Dakahlia 2022)
- C	2. Light travels in the form of	
	3. Objects that light can't pass through are called, while objects light to pass through are called	that allow
5	4. A tree forms a shadow as it is an object that doesn't allow	to pass
	through.	
	<ol><li>Cloth and paper are considered surfaces that scatter or diffusenergy.</li></ol>	
	6. Human body, wood and are considered materials which light to pass through.	ch
	7. Rough materials reflect light than smooth materials.	
	8. Things can be seen through objects such as and	12. Piede
6		J. Keneu
•	1. Shadow of an opaque body is formed when light falls on it.	
No.	4. Quaque material (A	
	2. You can see an object placed behined a glass cup.	
	arent objects include mirrors and lenses	dansi Transp
	3. A mirror can reflect light better than a painted surface.	(Giza 2023)
	coden piece and paper reliest incoming light raise at the summanule.	9.80th w
	n they struck them:	at which
	enects most of the property of the contract of the objects are and the contract of the contrac	BILOTTICE TO
E		
	1. You place a wood sheet between a light source and a wall.	
	a that allow light to pose through	
	2. Light falls on a transparent body such as a glass window.	
	registration de la conferencia de la c La conferencia de la	11 129 760
	B. Ohn evens of the great stight to mongroup on the support a significant of the support of the	992 9W 7
	3. Light falls on a rough surface.	
	v. ceriyar secreti er. 1939a af Kalifa Pilitag Sakill A filla Pilanotom	2 <u>Opaque</u>
	이 그리고 요즘 나는 아이들은 아이는 아이들이 아이들이 아이들이 아이들이 아이들이 아이들이 아이들이	

9	Arrange the following statements to sho see different objects:	w the correct sequence of how humans
	() Special nerves in the eyes s	end messages to the brain.
	() The reflected light rays trave	
201	() The brain interprets the mes	
1	() Light rays reflect off objects	around us.
10	Look at the following figures, then answ	er the questions below: (Giza 2022)
•		Turning townside
100	Figure (a)  1. Complete:	Figure (b)
b	a. The surface in figure (a) is	2. If we replaced the algest with another
	- Becauseb. The surface in figure (b) is	
6	c. In the previous two figures, the falling travels in lines.	
	2. Choose:	
	The surface in figure (a) may be	
	a. plastic. b. wood.	c. mirror. d. cloth.
	Classify the fallowing materials into sme	noth materials and rough materials
i	Classify the following materials into smo " Cloth – Mirror – Woo	
100	Smooth materials	Rough materials
		e A - 2 famesions into
	3.000 500000000	West nice there was a surface.
12	Classify the following materials into opa	que objects and transparent objects :
	" Wood – Air – Water -	– Metal – Lenses "
	Opaque objects	Transparent objects
	e waar eesson mates and attorns	g produces

13 Study the following figure that shows a sheet placed between a flashlight and a mirror, then choose the correct answer:



- 1. The mirror can reflect the light rays, if the sheet is made up of ...... ( wood glass )
- 2. If we replaced the sheet with another mirror, it will ...... the light rays.

  ( pass reflect )

# **LESSON THREE**

# Activity 6

### **Firefly Light Show**

Look at the opposite photo, then put (√) or (x):	dies	
1. The firefly beetle is considered as a type of insect. (	)"	
2 The firefly heetle can produce light	pos	

Firefly beetle

### How do fireflies beetles produce the lights they use to communicate?

• Fireflies beetles are type of insects that can produce a chemical reaction inside their bodies that allows them to light up and communicate with other fireflies.

#### ▶ How do fireflies use their senses to communicate?

- 1. Fireflies use their wings to form different flash patterns to:
  - Warn off other firefly beetles from predators.
  - Attract a mate to reproduce.
- 2. They flash at regular periods of time, but if there is another group of fireflies flashing nearby, they will change their own flash pattern to match the flash pattern of the other group to communicate.

### **Note**

Humans use lights to communicate with each other to transfer information such as using traffic lights.

# Check your understanding

#### ▶ Choose the correct answer :

- 1. The chemical reaction inside firefly beetles allow them to ......
  - a. reflect the sunlight.b. reflect the moon light.
  - c. produce their own light. d. produce their own sound.
- 2. Firefly beetles use different flash patterns for ......
  - a. warning off from predators only.
  - b. attracting mates only.
  - c. warning off from predators and attracting mates.
  - d. warning off from mates and attracting predators.

chemical reaction regular

forest تفاعل کیمیائی pattern منتظم غابة نمط/ أسلوب

traffic lights غابة

إشارات المرور الضوئية

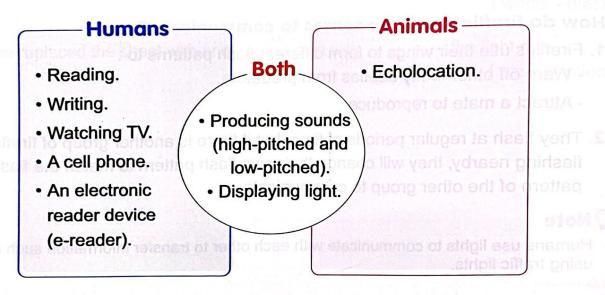
# Activity 7

# What Do You Already Know About Communication and Information Transfer?

· There are some similarities and differences between types of communication and transferring information in humans and animals.



▶ The following figure shows some different types of communication in humans, animals and both:



### Check your understanding

- ▶ Choose the correct answer :
  - 1. .....is considered as a type of communication that is used by humans only.

(Echolocation – A cell phone – Displaying light)

2. .....is considered as a type of communication that is used by animals only. (Writing – Echolocation – High-pitched sound)

> In the Assessment Book: Try to answer: Self-Assessment (12)

high-pitched sound

صوت عالى وحاد

e-reader

قارئ الكتروني

# **Exercises on Lesson 3**

Understand	I O Apply	● Higher TI	ninking Skills
1 Choose the correct	answer:		
in pin and transaction	oird, but it is a type of	device that is used to	
a. amphibians.			d. reptiles.
			uce a flash light?
a. To attract a ma		b. For commun	
c. To warn off fro	m predators.	d. To hear in the	e dark.
3. Changing the paradaptation(s).	ttern of lighting up in a	a firefly is an exam	ple of
a. structural and	behavioral	b. physical and	behavioral
c. only structural		d. only behavio	
4. People can use t	he following ways to	communicate, exc	ept
a. reading.	b. writing.	c. speaking.	d. flying.
<ol><li>5. The ability to cor from animals.</li></ol>	nmunicate through lar	nguage and speec	h separates
a. humans	b. animals	c. plants	d. non living things
a. humans	b. animals is a type of communic	c. birds	(Giza 2022 / Cairo 2023) d. plants
a. plants and ani		b. plants and hi	
c. animals and h	umans.	d. plants and no	on living things.
Choose from colun	nn (B) what suits it in	column (A):	$\ldots = \{1, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2, 2, \dots, 2, 2, 2, 2, \dots, 2, 2, \dots, 2, 2, \dots, 2, 2, \dots, 2, \dots,$
(A)		(B)	
<ol> <li>Watching TV</li> <li>Echolocation</li> <li>Displaying light</li> </ol>	<ul><li>a. is a type of comm</li><li>b. is a type of comm</li><li>c. is a type of comm</li><li>d. is a type of comm</li></ul>	unication in anima unication in humar	ls only. ns only.
1	2		3
Put (//) or (X):  1. Fireflies produce 2. Fireflies are wing	flash lights to warn o	ff from predators.	Troffic lights.

	3. Speaking is the only way to communicate with people. (Giza 20	23) (	)
Ĭ	4. Echolocation is a type of communication between humans.	(	j
Ĭ	5. Fireflies produce a chemical reaction inside their bodies that allows		,
	them to light up.	(	)
	6. A cell phone is a device that is used in communication between humans	s. (	)
	Complete the following sentences :		_
4	-	airo 20	1231
Ĭ	2. Fireflies produce flash patterns to attract to reproduce.		-0)
Ī	3. Fireflies communicate with each other by producing a inside thei that makes them light up.	r bodi	es
	4. A group of fireflies can change their own to match the flash patte another group to communicate.	rn of	
ļ	5. Watching TV is a type of communication that use the senses of	nd	
	6. Among the types of communication that are used by humans only are and		
	7. The types of communication that are used by both animals and human are and	S. Th	
	Give reasons for :		
9		odina	
i	1. Humans receive and send information through speaking, writing and re	auing	•
	2. Fireflies use different patterns of flash lights to communicate with each	other	
Ì	2. Firefiles use different patterns of flash lights to communicate with cach	Otrior.	,
	3. Fireflies produce a chemical reaction inside their bodies.	11.3	
	3. I ilelies produce a orientical reaction inside their bodies.	1.6	
	animers and numeris. U. pietro end non trangate	) ,c2	
6	6 What happens if ?		
	A firefly wants to attract a mate to reproduce.	Cairo 2	023)
	(3)		
E	Put (🗸) in front of the way of communication used in each of the following	g iter	ns :
1	Items Light Sound Both light and	sour	nd
	1. Car lamps.		5
	2. Television.		
	3. Traffic lights.	galet niga	
	4. Radio.	2. Fir	
1			

# **LESSON FOUR**

# Activity 8

### **Transferring Information**

#### ▶ Put (√) or (x):

- 1. Fireflies communicate with each other through sounds.
- 2. Humans communicate with each other through language.
- Sense organs collect information about the world around us then send signals to the brain through nerves for processing and understanding.
- Human senses are used to gather information from the environment and communicate with others, where:
  - Eyes detect light energy.
- 2. Ears detect sound energy.

#### Examples of information that the eyes receive :



Seeing the red traffic light means that you must stop.



People use a rescue flare to get help.



People use signal fires to communicate over distances of many kilometers.



Many hikers (travelers) use mirrors to attract the attention of rescue helicopters.

### **Codes and transferring information:**

Humans use codes to transmit information.

#### Code:

It is a pattern that has meaning.

rescue flare

hikers / travelers شعلة انقاذ

attention رحالة / مسافرين

153 انتباه

#### **Examples:**

- Thumbs-up or thumbs-down: can express simple meanings like good and bad.
- Traffic lights: can express simple meaning like stop and go.



 Expressions on faces: are codes that can help people predict our feelings such as happy, sad, angry ... etc.



 Language: is a code in the form of sounds, where different languages are different codes that are used to transfer information.



 Writing: is a code that uses symbols in a pattern to give a specific meaning according to the arrangement of letters in a word.



 Music or Sounds: are different sound tones produced from humans or musical instruments can be used in communication.



 Lighthouse: sends codes in the form of flashes of light that tell sailors where they are.



When sense organs receive this information and send messages to the brain, the brain decodes and interprets the meaning.



# Check your understanding

▶ Put (√) or (x):

1. Ears and eyes send signals to the brain through nerves for processing and understanding.

2. The code is a pattern that has meaning.

#### Review on Concept (1.3)

To review this concept look at the Assessment Book "Part 2: Final Revision".

In the Assessment Book: Try to answer:

Self-Assessment (13)

Model Exam on Theme (1)

thumb express expressions predict

الأبهام يعبر decode يتنبأ/يتوقع

feelings instruments lighthouse التعبيرات

مشاعر الآلات / الأدوات فنار / منارة يحل شفرة

interpret sailors

لبحارة

# **Exercises on Lesson 4**

<ul><li>Understand</li></ul>	O App	oly	<ul><li>Higher Thinking Skills</li></ul>		
Choose the correct a	answer:				
1. All of the following	are forms of co	des, except	(Ismailia	202	2)
a. thumb up and down hands.		b. faces exp	Inter majored or all a little	7	_,
c. writing.		d. swimmin			
2. When your eyes s	ee a red traffic l	ight, this mea	ns that you have to		
a. increase your s		b. cross the	[뭐리션 ^ ^ 시간 : 이 사람이 :		
c. keep your speed	d as it is.	d. stop at or	nce.		
3. People use a resc	ue flare to com	municate with	each other depending on the	he	
sense of					
a. hearing. b	. sight.	c. smell.	d. touch.		
4. Sense organs coll	ect information	and send sigr	nals to for processing	and	t
understanding.			(Port Said	202	22)
a. hands b	. legs	c. brain	d. stomach		
5. All the following si	gnals are inform	nation that the	eyes receive, except		
The same of the sa					
a. green traffic ligh	nt.	b. fire alarm	The state of the s		
<ul><li>a. green traffic light</li><li>c. signal fires.</li></ul>			The state of the s		
c. signal fires.	going to cross I	d. rescue fla	hat happens if ?	W T	6
	going to cross I	d. rescue fla	hat happens if ?	W in	
c. signal fires.	going to cross I	d. rescue fla	hat happens if ?	W IT	3 A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A
c. signal fires.  Choose from column	n (B) what suits	d. rescue fla	hat happens if?  ne traffic light becomes r.and  : (A)	IT 2	
c. signal fires.  Choose from column  (A)	a. is a code	d. rescue fla  it in column  that means t	hat happens if?  ne traffic light becomes r.ens  : (A)	W IT	3
c. signal fires.  Choose from column  (A)  1. Thumb-up	a. is a code b. is a code	d. rescue fla  it in column  that means to that means to	(A):  (B)  hat you are in a danger.	W IT	
c. signal fires.  Choose from column  (A)  1. Thumb-up	a. is a code b. is a code	d. rescue fla  it in column  that means to that means to	(A):  (B)  hat you are in a danger. hat you say "Yes".		
c. signal fires.  Choose from column  (A)  1. Thumb-up	a. is a code b. is a code	d. rescue fla  it in column  that means to that means to	(A):  (B)  hat you are in a danger. hat you say "Yes".	W T	6
c. signal fires.  Choose from column  (A)  1. Thumb-up 2. Thumb-down	a. is a code b. is a code	d. rescue fla  it in column  that means to that means to	(A):  (B)  hat you are in a danger. hat you say "Yes". hat you say "No".	W T	
c. signal fires.  Choose from column  (A)  1. Thumb-up 2. Thumb-down  1  Put (\( \subsete \)) or (\( X \) :	a. is a code b. is a code c. is a code	d. rescue flat in column (extract means to that means to the theta means to the the that means to the the the that means to the	(A):  (B)  hat you are in a danger. hat you say "Yes". hat you say "No".	W T	6
c. signal fires.  Choose from column  (A)  1. Thumb-up 2. Thumb-down  1  Put ( ) or ( X ): 1. Animals communic	a. is a code b. is a code c. is a code	d. rescue flatin column (ethat means to that means to that means to that means to the the that means to the that means to the that means to the the the the the that means to the	(A):  (B)  hat you are in a danger. hat you say "Yes". hat you say "No".		)
c. signal fires.  Choose from column  (A)  1. Thumb-up 2. Thumb-down  1  Put ( ) or ( X ): 1. Animals communic	a. is a code b. is a code c. is a code	d. rescue flatin column (ethat means to that means to that means to that means to the the that means to the that means to the that means to the the the the the that means to the	(A):  (B)  hat you are in a danger. hat you say "Yes". hat you say "No".		
c. signal fires.  Choose from column  (A)  1. Thumb-up 2. Thumb-down  1  Put (✓) or (X): 1. Animals communic 2. Sense organs can	a. is a code b. is a code c. is a code decate with each of	d. rescue flatin column (ethat means to that means to that means to that means to the the the that means to the the the that means to the the the the that means to the	(A):  (B)  hat you are in a danger. hat you say "Yes". hat you say "No".		
c. signal fires.  Choose from column  (A)  1. Thumb-up 2. Thumb-down  1  Put ( ) or ( X ): 1. Animals communic 2. Sense organs can	a. is a code b. is a code c. is a code decode the infeces are codes t	that means to the the that means to the that means to the the that means to the that means to the that means to the the that means to the that means to the that means to the the the that means to the the the that means to the	(A):  (B)  hat you are in a danger. hat you say "Yes". hat you say "No".  2		

4 Wr	ite the scientific tern	n of each of the following:	
The second secon		detect sound energy.	()
	Sense organ that can		(Giza 2022) ()
		nat tell sailors where they are.	()
Co	mplete the following	sentences:	roh bita ya di ere
	energy and	eyes of human detect	s of human detect energy.
		energy in their communication.	unicato
		se the sense of to com	
4. \	Writing is a way of coo	ding that uses the sense of	to communicate.
6 Giv	ve reasons for :		In dames
1.7	The symbols that are	used in writing have a specific pa	attern.
2. F	People use face expre	essions during talking with each o	other.
- L.		over will hard produced all one star	min - 2012 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
		red while you are going to cross ure, then put (	o trie road.
	Tabuah a di ole no	(2)	
J2	Flashlight	Eye	Brain
	(1)	(3)	(5)
1. N	umber (5) represents	the sense organ of light.	(S) )r((N) or (X):
2. N	umber (1) represents	a source of light.	( ) Animals communication
	2 시간 (Part Part ) 전 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	a special nerve through which t	he eye sends
	formation to the brain	Particular successful and the second	Professional R
	umber (2) represents e eye.	a light ray that travels in straigh	t line to enter
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1		rking together to collect and	ooo different
	ounds.	rking together to collect and pro-	cess allierent
] 30	and.		( )

# **Model Exam** 1



# on Concept (1.3)

Total	mark
) <del>[</del> 1	5

	(5 ma	irks)
1 can communicate by displaying light.		
a. All animals b. All plants		
c. All plants and animals d. Humans and some animals		
2. Each of human and fishing cat,		
c. has two eyes adapted for vision. d. becomes more active at night.		
3. Which of the following communications depends on the sense of sight only	?	
a. Watching TV. b. Flashing lights of fireflies.		
c. Echolocation. d. Using the cell phone.		
4. Painted surface the incoming light rays.		
a. absorbs only b. reflects only		
the state of the s		
c. absorbs and reflects d. allows to pass		
c. absorbs and reflects  d. allows to pass  (B) Give a reason for the following:  You can see an object placed behined a glass cup.		27) 27)
(B) Give a reason for the following:  You can see an object placed behined a glass cup.	(5 ma	 
(B) Give a reason for the following:  You can see an object placed behined a glass cup.	(5 ma	arks)
(B) Give a reason for the following:  You can see an object placed behined a glass cup.  (A) Put (✓) or (X):	(	arks)
(B) Give a reason for the following:  You can see an object placed behined a glass cup.  (A) Put (✓) or (X):  1. Transparent objects don't allow light to pass through them.	(	nrks)
<ul> <li>(B) Give a reason for the following: You can see an object placed behined a glass cup. (A) Put (✓) or (X): <ol> <li>Transparent objects don't allow light to pass through them.</li> <li>Human has huge eyes like fishing cat to gather and reflect any light available</li> </ol> </li> </ul>	(	) )

3	(A) Complete the following sentences:
	Theis the main control center in humans and animals bodies, while  are considered the organ of sight in their bodies.
	Fishing cats depend on the sense of in weak light levels, while in complete darkness they depend on the senses of and
	3. In the eyes of animals, there is a mirror-like membrane that light.
	Paper and a piece of cloth are considered surfaces that diffuse or scatter energy.
	(B) Cross out the odd word :
	1. Fire – Candle – The moon. ()
	2. Flashlight – The moon – Mirror.

# **Model Exam** 2



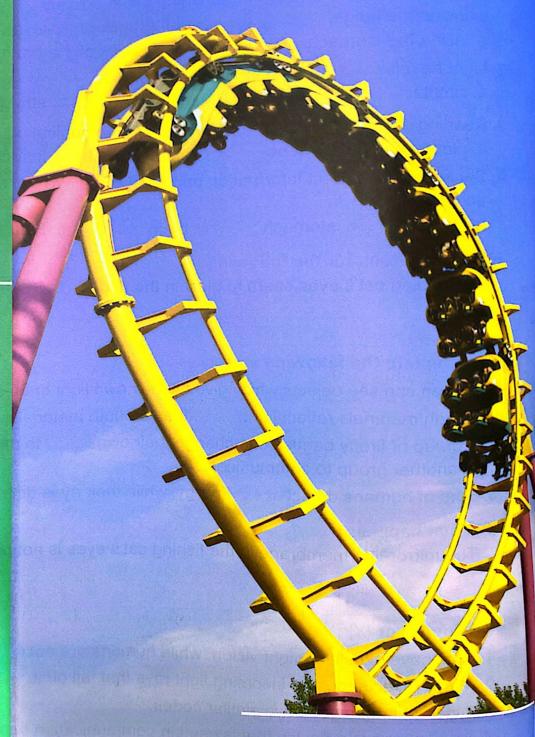
# on Concept (1.3)

Total	mark
<u>_</u>	5

The state of the s				
(A) Choose the	correct answer:			(5 mark
1. The mirror-lil	ke membrane of t	he fishing cat is	present	
a. inside the	C SCOT IN COLUMN	b. at the back	,	
	stomach.	d. at the back		
	in lines in t			
a. circular	b. curved	c. zigzag	d. straight	
3. Reading and	I writing are comn	non types of com	nmunication inw	orld.
a. plants	b. humans	c. animals	d. insects	
<ol> <li>Sense organ understandir</li> </ol>		ion and send sig	nals to for proce	essing and
a. legs	b. stomach	c. brain	d. hands	
	cat's eyes seem to	yiow iii the dan	<b>\.</b>	
(A) Complete t	the following sen	toncos :		(5 mark
(A) Complete	the following sen	telices.		The second secon
			n light or objects which	
1. Human can	see objects which	give off their owr	n light or objects which h materials.	
1. Human can s 2. Rough mate 3. A group of fi	see objects which rials reflect light refly beetles can o	give off their owr than smoot change their own		light
<ol> <li>Human can s</li> <li>Rough mate</li> <li>A group of fine</li> <li>of another g</li> </ol>	see objects which rials reflect light refly beetles can d roup to communic	give off their owr than smoot change their own cate.	h materials.	ligh
<ol> <li>Human can see</li> <li>Rough mate</li> <li>A group of fit of another get</li> <li>Ears of human</li> </ol>	see objects which rials reflect light refly beetles can d roup to communic ans detect	give off their owr than smoot change their own cate.	h materials.	ligh
<ol> <li>Human can see</li> <li>Rough mate</li> <li>A group of fine</li> <li>of another gree</li> <li>Ears of human</li> <li>(B) What happe</li> </ol>	see objects which rials reflect light refly beetles can droup to communicans detect	give off their owr than smoot change their own cate. energy, while the	h materials.	ligh
<ol> <li>Human can see</li> <li>Rough mate</li> <li>A group of fill of another ge</li> <li>Ears of hum</li> <li>(B) What happe</li> </ol>	see objects which rials reflect light refly beetles can droup to communicans detect	give off their owr than smoot change their own cate. energy, while the	h materials.	ligh
1. Human can see a. Rough mate 2. Rough mate 3. A group of fine of another great another great another great another great are of hum (B) What happed The mirror-line mirror-	see objects which rials reflect light refly beetles can droup to communicans detect	give off their owr than smoot change their own cate. energy, while the	h materials.	ligh
1. Human can so a so	see objects which rials reflect light refly beetles can droup to communicans detect	give off their own than smoot change their own cate. energy, while the the fishing cat's e	h materials.  Ito match the flatering every detecte  eyes is not present.	ash patterr
1. Human can so a so a so a so a so a nother grant that the cars of human (B) What happed The mirror-limits (A) Put (V) or a so a	see objects which rials reflect light refly beetles can droup to communicans detect	give off their own than smoot change their own cate. energy, while the the fishing cat's e	h materials.  I to match the flatering every detect every eyes is not present.  Is are not.	ash patterr
1. Human can so a so a so a so a so a nother growth and the so a so	see objects which rials reflect light refly beetles can droup to communicans detect	give off their own than smoot change their own cate. energy, while the the fishing cat's energy, while the con, while humans and light rays that	h materials.  I to match the flatering every detect every eyes is not present.  Is are not.	ash patterr
1. Human can so 2. Rough mate 3. A group of find of another growth and the growth and the growth and the mirror-life.  (A) Put (/) or 1. Cats have except and the growth an	refly beetles can droup to communicans detect	give off their own than smoot change their own cate. energy, while the the fishing cat's energy, while the fishing cat's energy that ilar codes. In gight rays that ilar codes. In gight communication on the fishing cat's energy that ilar codes.	h materials.  I to match the flater eyes detect express is not present.  Is are not.  Ifall on it.	nergy.
1. Human can so 2. Rough mate 3. A group of find of another growth and the growth and the growth and the mirror-life.  (A) Put (/) or 1. Cats have except and the growth an	see objects which rials reflect light refly beetles can droup to communicans detect	give off their own than smoot change their own cate. energy, while the the fishing cat's energy, while the fishing cat's energy that ilar codes. In gight rays that ilar codes. In gight communication on the fishing cat's energy that ilar codes.	h materials.  I to match the flater eyes detect express is not present.  Is are not.  Ifall on it.	nergy.
1. Human can so 2. Rough mate 3. A group of find of another growth and the solution of another growth and the mirror-life (A) Put (V) or 1. Cats have expected as Different land 4. A cell phone (B) Write the solution of the	refly beetles can droup to communicans detect	give off their own than smoot change their own cate. energy, while the the fishing cat's energy that ilar codes. Is used in communication of the following light rays that it is used in communication of the following light rays that is used in commu	h materials.  I to match the flater eyes detect express is not present.  Is are not.  Ifall on it.	nergy.
1. Human can so 2. Rough mate 3. A group of find of another grade. Ears of human (B) What happed The mirror-limited (A) Put (1/2) or 1. Cats have expected 2. Mirror reflection 3. Different land 4. A cell phone (B) Write the second control of the second can be seen as a second control of the second can be seen as a second control of the second can be seen as a second control of the second can be seen as a second can be second can be seen as a second can be seen as a second can be se	refly beetles can describe to communicate and detect	give off their own than smoot change their own cate. energy, while the the fishing cat's energy that ilar codes. Is used in communication of the following light rays that it is used in communication of the following light rays that is used in commu	h materials.  I to match the flater eyes detect express is not present.  Is are not.  Ifall on it.	ish patterr nergy. (5 mark ( ( ( nals. (

# THEME TWO: MATTER AND ENERGY

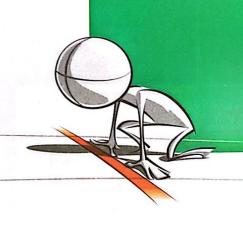
UNIT



MOTION

# **Get Started**

# What I Already Know



- All objects need energy to start or to stop motion.
- The opposite image shows a person in a wheelchair, where :
  - This person needs a small amount of force and energy to push the wheels of the chair to move down the ramp.
  - But, if this person needs to move up the ramp, so this person needs a larger amount of force and energy to push the wheels.



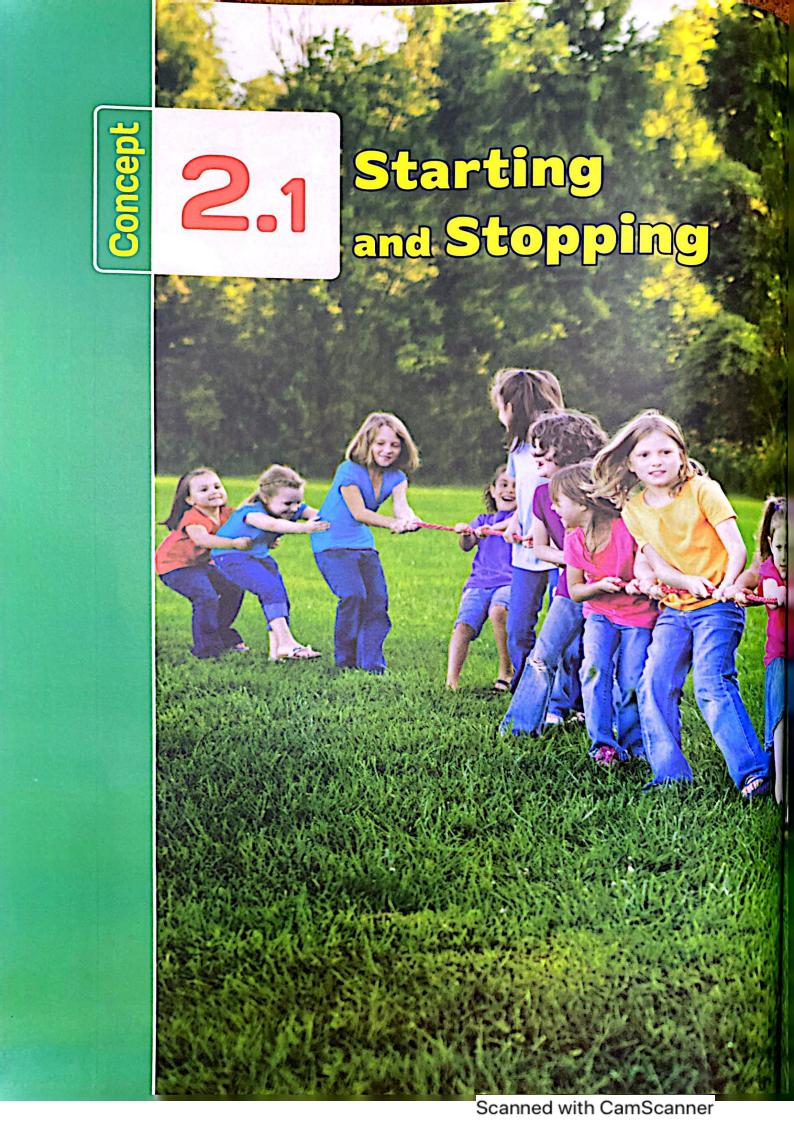
#### In this unit, you are going to study :

- How energy and motion are related.
- How energy changes when a force affects an object.
- The relationship between energy and work.
- How to observe and calculate the speed of a moving object.
- What happens when objects collide or crash together?

#### · Unit project : Vehicle safety :

- Cars have a lot of safety features to keep the driver and passengers safe during crashes such as seatbelts and airbags.
- At the end of this unit, you are going to make a research project about one of the safety features in cars and create a plan to improve this safety features.







### **Learning outcomes**

# By the end of this concept, your child will be able to:

- Explain and model what causes objects to change motion.
- Analyze data to explain different causes of changes in an object's motion.
- Cite evidence to show how speed is related to energy for an object.
- Model the cause and effect relationship between the force acting on an object and the object's motion.

# Key vocabulary

- Energy
- Gravity
- Force
- Motion
- Friction
- Work

# Notes For Parents On Concept [2.1]

Lessons	Activities	What you should do with your child
	Activity 1	Discuss with your child some examples that need pushing or pulling forces.
1	Activity 2	Explain to your child the meaning of the "jet engine" and also help him/her to read more about the "the Shockwave truck".
	Activity 3	Discuss with your child how the air provides force to move some objects.
	Activity 4	Explain to your child the effect of balanced forces and unbalanced forces in our daily life.
2	Activity 5	Discuss with your child the meaning of "gravity" and its effect on all objects on the Earth's surface.
	Activity 6	Explain to your child the meaning of "force" and its effect in our daily life.
2	Activity 7	Explain to your child the meaning of "friction force" and also let him/her mention some examples of friction force.
3	Activity 8	Discuss with your child the relation between the amount of force acts on an object and the distance covered by this object.
	Activity 9	Discuss with your child the relation between energy, work and force.
4	Activity 10	Help your child to think like a scientist by answering a question about one of the main points of this concept, then write his/her claim, evidence and scientific explanation.

# LESSON ONE

Activity 1 Can You Explain?



# Did you think about how each of the objects above start to move?

- The objects above require a force to stop or move.
   This force could be a pushing force or a pulling force.
- To move or to stop an object, the forces acting on this object must change.
- · We need energy to apply these forces to the objects, where :
  - The person in picture 1 needs energy to push the car.
- The person in picture 2 needs energy to pull the suitcase.
- The football player in picture 3 needs energy to push the ball, while the goalkeeper needs energy to push against the ball to stop it.

### In this concept, we will study:

- How forces act on different objects to move or stop them.
- The meaning of force.
- The relationship between energy, work and force.

force	قوة	pushing force	قوة الدفع	pulling force	قوة السحب
goalkeeper	حارس مرمی	against	ضد/عکس	suitcase	حقيبة سفر
acting on	يۇثر على	require	تتطلب	energy	طاقة

165

# Activity 2

# **Truck Versus Airplane**

#### ▶ Look at the following pictures, then put $(\checkmark)$ or (X):

An airplane can move faster than a truck. (





Truck

**Airplane** 

#### Truck versus jet airplane:

In the pictures above, the engines on a jet airplane are much more powerful than the engine in a truck.

So, jet airplanes fly much faster than moving trucks.

#### The Shockwave truck:

- The truck in the opposite picture is called "the Shockwave"
- The Shockwave truck contains three jet engines.



The Shockwave truck

#### How does the Shockwave move?

- The three jet engines make the Shockwave truck reach speeds more than 500 kilometers per hour.
- The Shockwave is about five times faster than the normal trucks.



### How does the Shockwave stop?

- To stop the Shockwave, engineers install three parachutes in it, that the driver opens them to help slow down the Shockwave quickly.
- The idea of parachutes is used in rocket designs.



# 門門

# Check your understanding

Complete the following sentences using the words below:

#### (faster than - slower than)

- 1. The speed of a normal truck is ...... that of a jet airplane.
- 2. The speed of the Shockwave truck is ...... that of a normal truck.

truck jet airplane

شاحنه طائرة نفاثة engineer versus engine مهندس install عکس rocket محرك

صاروخ

# 

### All objects around us cannot move without push and pull forces, where:



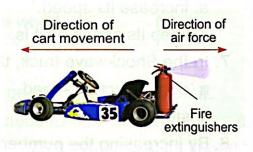
A ball lying on the ground does not move until someone pushes it with his foot to make the ball roll.



A closed drawer does not open until someone pulls the handle with his hand to open the drawer.

#### Air force :

- Air can provide enough force to move some objects such as : The wind blowing that can move the leaves of a tree.
- Let's see how engineers prove that the force of air can move some objects like "a cart".
  - Some engineers fix fire extinguishers onto a cart.
  - When they release air from the fire extinguishers, the air moves backward that makes the cart begins to move forward.
- By increasing the number of fire extinguishers, the speed of the cart increases and the distance that it moves increases too and vice versa.



A cart with fire extinguishers



# Check your understanding

#### ▶ Put (√) or (\*):

- 1. Objects can move due to the effect of push or pull forces.
- 2. Air has a force that can move some objects.



( )

In the Assessment Book : Try to answer : Self-Assessment 14

roll handle leaves يدحرج provide wind blowing مقبض fix أوراق الأشجار يمد هبوب الرياح دفيت fire extinguisher vice versa cart

طفاية حريق العكس صحيح عربة صغيرة

release distance enough إطلاق مسافة كافى

167

# **Exercises on Lesson 1**

Higher Thinking Skills

Understand Apply Choose the correct answer: 1. Push or pull actions are considered as types of ......... (Giza 2023/Alexandria 2022) d. adaptation. c. energy. a. force. b. device. 2. When you kick a ball, it moves due to the effect of ......... b. pushing force only. a. pulling force only. d. sound energy only. c. pushing and pulling forces. 3. When you move something away from you, this represents ....... c. pulling force. d. sound energy. a. pushing force. b. light energy. 4. When you move something toward you, this represents ........ d. sound energy. c. pulling force. a. pushing force. b. light energy. (Cairo 2023 / Cairo 2022) 5. The speed of a normal truck is more than that of ......... b. a jet airplane and a rocket. a. a jet airplane only. d. a bicycle only. c. a rocket and a bicycle. 6. Parachutes are used in the Shockwave truck to ........ b. decrease its speed. a. increase its speed. c. keep its speed as it is. d. change its direction. 7. In the Shockwave truck, the three jet engines, ......... b. decrease its speed. a. don't affect its speed. d. increase its speed. c. stop its motion. 8. By increasing the number of fire extinguishers fixed to a cart, its speed ....... b. decreases. a. increases. d. becomes zero. c. doesn't change. 9. All the following motions occur by the effect of pulling force, except ......... b. opening a closed drawer. a. kicking a ball. (Cairo 2022) d. lifting up a bag from the ground. c. wearing your socks. 10. The ...... of the air that comes out of fire extinguishers causes the movement of a cart forward. c. pushing force d. sound energy b. light energy a. pulling force 2 Put (**/**) or (**X**): 1. To open or close a door, we have to push or pull it. 2. Putting on a pair of socks needs a pushing force.

The state of the s	car forward or backward.	
4. A car can move faster than a	a bicycle.	
5. A normal truck can move fas	ster than a jet airplane.	E
6. The three jet engines in the	Shockwave truck allow it to fly.	
7. A normal truck is slower than	n the Shockwave truck.	
	v down the speed of the Shockwave truck	
<ol><li>When the air is released back the cart moves backward.</li></ol>	ckward from the fire extinguishers fixed to a car	t,
<ol> <li>By decreasing the number of cart increases.</li> </ol>	of fire extinguishers fixed to a cart, the speed of	the
11. Using a remote control of a buttons.	television needs a pushing force to act on its	
<ol><li>By increasing the speed of a decrease.</li></ol>	a moving cart, the distance that it moves will (	
Write the scientific term of ea	ach of the following :	
Write the scientific term of each of the scientific term of the scie		
1. A force that you make to mo		
<ol> <li>A force that you make to mo</li> <li>A force that you make to mo</li> </ol>	ove an object toward you. (	
<ol> <li>A force that you make to mo</li> <li>A force that you make to mo</li> <li>One of the fastest and most</li> </ol>	ove an object toward you. (	
1. A force that you make to mo 2. A force that you make to mo 3. One of the fastest and most  Complete the following senters	ove an object toward you. (	
1. A force that you make to mo 2. A force that you make to mo 3. One of the fastest and most  Complete the following sente  1. The car can move or stop description.	ove an object toward you. (	
1. A force that you make to mo 2. A force that you make to mo 3. One of the fastest and most  Complete the following sente 1. The car can move or stop d 2. To move anything from one 3. In the Shockwave truck, eng	ove an object toward you. (	it.
1. A force that you make to mo 2. A force that you make to mo 3. One of the fastest and most  Complete the following sente 1. The car can move or stop d 2. To move anything from one 3. In the Shockwave truck, engand they installed three	ove an object toward you. (	it.
1. A force that you make to mo 2. A force that you make to mo 3. One of the fastest and most  Complete the following sente 1. The car can move or stop d 2. To move anything from one 3. In the Shockwave truck, end and they installed three 4. The idea of stopping the Sh a moving	ove an object toward you.  ove an object away from you. (Cairo 2023) (	it.
<ol> <li>A force that you make to mode.</li> <li>A force that you make to mode.</li> <li>One of the fastest and most.</li> <li>Complete the following sente.</li> <li>The car can move or stop dod.</li> <li>To move anything from one.</li> <li>In the Shockwave truck, engand they installed three</li></ol>	ove an object toward you.  ove an object away from you. (Cairo 2023) (	it.

2.	Engineers u	se parachutes	in the	Shockwave	truck	designs.
----	-------------	---------------	--------	-----------	-------	----------

3. When you kick a ball laying on the ground, it moves.

### 6 What happens if ... ?

- 1. You kick a stopped ball on the ground.
- 2. Engineers placed jet engines inside a normal truck instead of its normal engine.

......

3. The Shockwave driver opens the parachutes.

# Look at the following pictures, then complete the following sentences:



Picture (1): Normal truck



Picture (2): Jet airplane

- 1. The engine of picture (.....) is much powerful than the engine of picture (......).
- 2. When the engines of picture (......) are placed in the picture (......) it will turn into the Shockwave truck.
- 3. The engines that are used in picture (......) are the same engines that are used in the Shockwave truck.

# 13 Look at the opposite figure, then answer the following questions:

1. In the opposite figure what happens if we increase the number of fire extinguishers fixed to the cart.



### 2. Put (V) or (X):

- 1. The air released by fire extinguishers moves backward, so the cart moves forward.
- 2. When we decrease the number of fire extinguishers, the cart moves for a longer distance.

# **LESSON TWO**

# Activity 4

# What Do You Already Know About Starting and Stopping?

#### ▶ Put (√) or (x):

A ball will not move if you push it with your foot.

### ( )

### How do objects move?

There are two forces that cause objects to move which are:

Pushing force	Pulling force
Example:	Example :
A man pushes a wheelbarrow.	A child pulls a toy car.

#### The relation between motion with balanced and unbalanced forces:

#### **Balanced forces Unbalanced forces** - If there are balanced forces act on an - If there are unbalanced forces act on an object, so this object will move. object, so this object will not move. Example: Example: - In the tug-of-war game, if the two - In the tug-of-war game, if one team is pulling the rope with a greater force. teams are pulling the rope with equal forces. - This means that, the forces that act on the rope are unbalanced (unequal) forces. - This means that, the forces that act on rope are balanced (equal) forces. - So, the rope will move toward the team with the greater force. - So, the rope will not move.

rope

team



# Check your understanding

- ▶ Put (√) or (x):
  - 1. If an object moves, it means that the forces acting on it are balanced.
  - 2. The unbalanced forces cause objects to move.
- Complete the sentence below each picture, using the words "pushing" or "pulling":



1. The player uses the force to hit the ball.



2. The man uses the ..... force to move his suitcase.



3. Children use the ..... force in tug-of-war game.



4. The boy uses the ..... force to move his skating board.

# **Activity** 5 Objects in Motion

### How do we know an object is moving?

- An object is in motion if its position changes from one place to another, even if this change can't be seen.
- The change in position of an object is compared to something else that is not usually moving (fixed point).

#### Motion:

It is any change in the position of an object relative to a fixed starting point.

### Example of an object motion:

The boy holding a ball in starting position which is close to the tree.



When he throws the ball, it will move by the pushing force through the air.



Then the ball will drop into the hand of the girl by the pulling force of gravity.

### **Gravity:**

It is the force that pulls objects down toward the Earth.





- The ball will stop by the pushing force of the hand of the girl against the ball movement.
- The position of the ball changes, relative to the tree which is the fixed starting point.



motion relative to holding

throw حركة drop نسبة إلى gravity إمساك

الجاذبية

starting يرمى position close to

toward بدایة fixed point

نقطة ثابتة

#### · Some motion are easy to see, such as:

A person walking down the street.

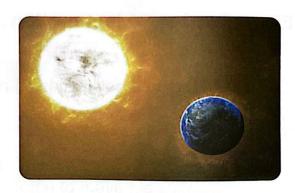


Leaves move by the wind blowing.



· Some motion are hard to see, such as :

The rotation of the Earth around the Sun.



# 1111

# Check your understanding

▶ Complete the following sentences using the words below :

(pull - position - force - motion)

- 1. A ...... must act on a ball to start motion, so the ...... of the ball will change.
- 2. There are two types of force which are a push force and a \_\_\_\_\_ force that cause the \_\_\_\_\_ of any object.

The ball will stop by the pushing force of the hand of the girl against the ball movement.

which is the fixed starting point.

# Activity 6

### **Force**

### What makes objects move?

Any object needs a force to move and change its position.

#### Force:

It is a push or pull that is applied to an object causes it to change its position.

# ▶ What are the forces that affect the bag when you lift it?

- The force of the gravity pulls your bag downward.
- The force of your arm pulls your bag upward.
- The pulling force of your arm is greater than the pulling force of the gravity (two unbalanced forces).
   So, the bag moves up toward the greater force.



### **Note**

To move up any object from the ground, the pulling force of your arm must be greater than the pulling force of the gravity.

#### Is there any force affects objects when they are not in motion?

#### 1. When you sit on a chair:

- The force of the gravity pulls you downward.
- The chair exerts force that pushes your body upward.
- The pulling force of the gravity is equal to the pushing force of the chair (two balanced forces).

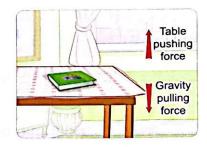


So, there is no motion due to the two balanced forces that hold you in the chair.

#### 2. When a book is put on a table :

- The force of the gravity pulls the book downward.
- The table exerts force that pushes the book upward.
- The pulling force of the gravity is equal to the pushing force of the table (two balanced forces).

So, there is no motion due to the two balanced forces that affect the book.



exert

lifting يبذل

downward يرفع

applied to لأسفل

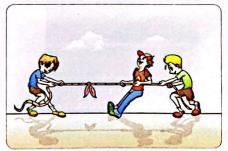
upward تنطبق على

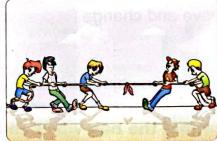
لأعلى

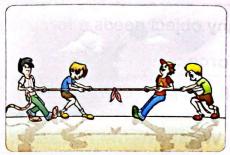


# Check your understanding

▶ Look at the following pictures, then answer the questions below :







Picture (1)

Picture (2)

Picture (3)

#### 1. Choose:

In this game when the rope moves, it moves toward the team with ...... force (greater – smaller).

- 2. Complete the sentences by writing if the forces are "balanced" or "unbalanced":
  - a. The forces in picture (1) are
  - b. The forces in picture (2) are
  - c. The forces in picture (3) are ...... rw stoeldo stoells solol yns erent al 4

In the Assessment Book:
Try to answer:

Self-Assessment 15

# **Exercises on Lesson 2**

	Citalia	O Walabilik	Hig	ner ininking Skills	
	Choose the correct answer:		AVERSON AS F	io Arganies ; . Arganies	
1	. All objects around us can mo	ve by the e	effect of		
	a. pushing force only.	b. pı	ulling force o	only.	
	c. pushing and pulling forces	. d. sc	ound and ligi	nt energies.	
2	. A ball may move away from	the foot of a	football pla	yer by the effect	t of
			ulling force o	and the second second	
	c. pushing and pulling forces	. d. sc	ound energy	only.	
3	. When an object is in motion, tl	nis means th	at its ch	anges. (Cairo 202	23 / Cairo 2022)
	a. color b. shape	c. siz	ze	d. position	
4	. When you sit on a chair, the	force of gra	vity is	and holding you	in the
	chair.				
	a. pulling you upward.	b. pı	ılling you do	wnward.	
	c. pushing you upward.	d. pı	ıshing you d	ownward.	(Cairo 2022)
5	. What makes a ball in the air	fall down to	the ground	?	
	a. Friction force.	b. G	ravity force.		
	c. Sound energy.	d. Li	ght energy.		
6.	. Which of the following will ca	use an obje	ect to move	?	
	a. Balanced forces.	b. Ur	nbalanced fo	orces.	
	c. Sound energy.	d. Li	ght energy.		(Luxor 2022)
7.	. In the tug-of-war game, two t				
	a. pull the rope in the same of	in ection.			
	b. push the rope in the same	direction.			
	c. pull the rope in opposite di	rections.			
	d. push the rope in opposite	directions.			
8.	In the tug-of-war game, wher	າ two teams	are pulling	a rope, and the	rope
does not move toward any team, this means that					
	a. equal forces are being app	olied on the	rope in the s	same direction.	
	b. equal forces are being app				
	c. unequal forces are being a				
	d. unequal forces are being a	ipplied on th	ne rope in op	posite direction	S.

	<ul> <li>9. Which of the following is an example of unbalanced forces?</li></ul>
	10. All of the following are examples of motion, except  a. a running person.  b. a ball travelling through the air.  c. a flying bird.  d. a sleeping dog.
	<ul> <li>11. Two equal forces act at the same time on a stopping object but in opposite directions. Which sentence describes the object's state?</li></ul>
	12. You can see the movement of the following objects, except the movement of
	13. Gravity is a force that
2	Put (✓) or (X):
	1. The stopping object can't move until a force acts on it. (Cairo 2023 / Minia 2022) (
	2. The rotation of the Earth around the Sun is easy to be seen. ( )
	3. Unbalanced forces keep an object in its place without moving. ( )
	4. If the two teams in the tug-of-war game are pulling the rope with equal forces,
	the rope will move toward one of the two teams.
١	5. Unbalanced forces cause a change in the object position. (Minia 2023) (
	6. If one team in the tug-of-war game pulls the rope with a greater force, the rope will move toward the team with the smaller force.
	Write the scientific term of each of the following:
1	1. It is a push or pull that is applied to an object causes it to change its position.
1	(Cairo 2022) (

O	2. The force you can do to move an object away from you.	()
ļ	3. The force you can do to bring an object closer to you.	()
	4. A change in the position of an object relative to a fixed starting point.	()
	5. The force that pulls objects down toward the Earth.	()
4	Complete the following sentences :	
	As you are sitting down on a chair, there are two forces that act on you which are the force of gravity and the force of the control of t	
	2. The toy placed on a table does not move due to the effect of the two acting on it.	o balanced
	<ol><li>In the tug-of-war game, the force of the stronger team make moves toward this team.</li></ol>	es the rope
	4. When you throw a ball up in the air, it starts to fall down again towar ground due to the effect of pulling force of	rd the
	5. When you lift up an object from the ground, there are two forces act are the force of your hand and force of the gravity.	on it, which
	<ol> <li>You can stop a moving basketball by the force of your hand ball movement.</li> </ol>	against the
	7. The train's position changes relative to the train station. This senten describes the meaning of	ce
	8. A chair stands on the floor due to the pulling force of	
	9. If you throw a ball through the air, it is affected by the force hand and the force of the Earth's gravity.	of your
	10. We can say that the object is in motion when it changes its position relative to a starting point.	
5	Correct the underlined words :	dall to
	1. Moving an object away from you represents a pulling force.	()
	2. Moving an object toward you represents a <u>pushing</u> force.	()
	3. The balanced forces cause the object to move. (Giza 2023/Gharbia 2022	<u>?</u> ) ()
	4. When you jump up, the force of friction pulls you back to the ground	
	<ol><li>Changing the position of an object relative to a fixed point is known as force.</li></ol>	
	6. The rope in the tug-of-war game may not move toward any team, if	both teams
	push with the same force.	()

6	Civo	reasons	for	
0	dive	leasulis	101	

<ol> <li>When two equal pushing forces act object doesn't move.</li> </ol>	on an object in opposite directions, the
2. If you let a pen out of your hand, it f	alls to the ground.
ve ous to the affect of the two battinded	an top seen eider once a seen some S
When your friend catches a ball that stopped.	at is thrown in the air, the motion of the ball is
tarts to fall down search toward libe.	4. When wouldrow a ball up in the air, it s

# What happens if ...?

	The pulling forces of the two teams are equal in the tug-of-war game.	
	7. The bain's position changes relative to the sam support the period of the bain and the bain a	
2.	You let your toy out of your hand. Light of submooff and go abried a light A .8	

Look at the following pictures, then choose if the forces are "Balanced" or "Unbalanced" :



1. A book on a table (Balanced – Unbalanced)



2. A seesaw (Balanced – Unbalanced)

# Mrite the type of force that is used in each of the following situations:



**1.** .....



2. .....





# 10 Look at the following picture, then choose the correct answer:



- 1. Among the forces that act on the basketball in this picture are ......
  - a. pushing force of both gravity and the player's hand.
  - b. pulling force of both gravity and the player's hand.
  - c. pushing force of gravity and pulling force of the player's hand.
  - d. pulling force of gravity and pushing force of the player's hand.
- 2. The basketball will fall down to the ground due to the ...... that acts on it.
  - a. pushing force of gravity b. pulling force of gravity
- - c. friction force of air

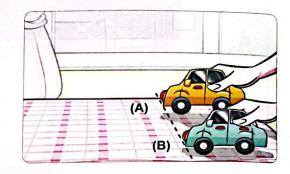
d. friction force of ground

# **LESSON THREE**

# Activity 7

# **Stopping Motion**

- ► Look at the opposite figure, then choose the correct answer:
  - If we roll the two cars with two different forces, where car (B) is pushed with a force greater than car (A).



# How does an object in motion stop?

A moving object only stops when a force of the same amount is applied to it in the opposite direction of its motion.

The force that stops a moving object may be :

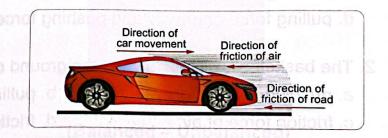
# When a car crashes into a wall, it will stop. Because the wall applied a force to the car with the same amount of the force that pushes the car toward the wall.

Easy to be observed

#### Hard to be observed

#### Example:

- When a car runs out of fuel on a flat road, its speed decreases gradually until it stops.
- · Because there is a friction force comes from :
- 1. Friction (rub) between the car tires and the road.
- Friction between the air that flows over the car against its surface.



#### Friction:

It is a force that is exerted when objects rub against each other.

#### **Notes**

- Friction force always slows down or stops motion of moving objects.
- 2. The direction of friction force is always opposite to the direction of motion of a moving object.



# Check your understanding

▶ Complete the following sentences using the words below :

(friction - opposes - unbalanced)

- 1. Any object moves from its place when the forces acting on it are
- 2. The force that slows down or stops motion is called ......
- 3. Friction is a force that ...... the motion direction.

# Activity 8

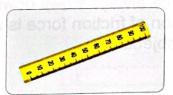
# **Rolling Cars**

 You have learned about the causes of motion, in this activity you will explore the effect of applying different amounts of force to an object.

Tools



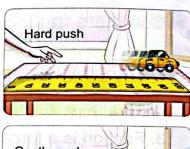
Toy car



Measuring ruler

# Steps

- Push a toy car hard from a starting point, and record the distance the toy car rolls by using the measuring ruler.
- Repeat the above step several times, and record the data in a table, then find the average distance.
- 3. Push a toy car very gently from the same starting point, and record the distance the toy car rolls.
- 4. Repeat step (3) several times, and record the data in another table, then find the average distance.





## **Observations**

 The car moves a large distance when it is pushed hard as shown in the following table:

Н	ard push
Trial	Distance (cm)
1	90 cm
2	75 cm
3	80 cm
4	95 cm
The average	e distance =
90 + 75 + 8	30 + 95
4	= 85 cm

 The car moves a small distance when it is pushed gently as shown in the following table:

Gentle push			
Trial Distance (cm			
1	14 cm		
2	17 cm		
3	20 cm		
4	17 cm		

The average distance = 14 + 17 + 20 + 17 : 17 cm

explore several times repeat average distance

trial عدة مرات متوسط المسافة

gently يكتشف hard push

data التجرية record دفعة قوية

gentle push برقة

دفعة خفيفة بيانات يسجل

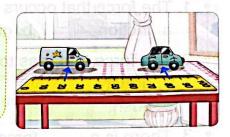
# Conclusions

- Hard push causes object to travel a long distance.
- Gentle push causes object to travel a small distance.

# **Note**

If the same force acts on a toy car and a toy truck:

- The car (the smaller object) will travel a farther distance.
- The truck (the bigger object) will travel a shorter distance.





# Check your understanding

#### ▶ Put (√) or (x):

- 1. A toy car travels a very small distance when it is pushed hard.
- 2. When we push a toy car and a toy truck with the same force, the toy car will move faster.

In the Assessment Book:

Self-Assessment (16)

# **Exercises on Lesson 3**

	<ul> <li>Understand</li> </ul>	O Apply	<ul> <li>Higher Thinking Skill</li> </ul>	S
1	Choose the correct ans	wer:	on, se this actual Jayen of locido securio s Torne to se ois sec	king c'hi≥Ô×
-		when an object rubs avity. c. pus	against another object is h. d. pull.	called (Minia 2022)
-	<ul><li>2. The force that tries to</li><li>a. gravity.</li><li>c. push.</li></ul>	stop an object movi b. frict d. pull		to the last of the standard of
	3. There is a force car's speed gradually a. gravity c. pushing		(Cairo 2023 ing	to decrease / Dakahlia 2022)
	<ul> <li>4. Which of the following</li> <li>a. It pulls objects towa</li> <li>b. It pushes objects a</li> <li>c. It slows down or sto</li> <li>d. It doesn't affect obj</li> </ul>	ard the ground. way from the ground ops objects in motion	ar traineill a very smail bir ve push a toy sas and a <b>!</b>	man de la companya de
	5. When an apple falls for a. friction force of air of b. gravity pulling force c. gravity pushing force d. friction of air and gravity pushing force d.	only. e only. ce only. ravity pulling forces.		
	pushes it with more for a. 5 b. 18	rce, it may cover a d	t covers a distance of 30 listance equal to cm d. 50	n. II ne
2	Put (✓) or (X) :	ara jaraj .	Tauff Reserve	to form in
	until it stops. 4. Friction force always at 5. The motion of an object 6. Hard push causes and 7. If the same force acts travel for a longer dist	to observe the force of fuel on a flat road slows down or stops ect on the ground is object to travel for a on two different object. ground to a distance	that stops an object.  its speed increases grade (Shades the motion of moving objected by a friction force)	rkia 2023) ( ) ojects. ( ) e. ( ) ct will ( )

5	Correct the underlined words:
	Moving object stops when a force of the same amount is applied to it in the same direction of its motion.  ()
	2. If a car runs out of fuel, its speed increases.
	3. The motion of a car is opposed by the gravity of air. (
4	Write the scientific term of each of the following:
	1. It is a force that is exerted when objects rub against each other. ()
	2. It is a force that slows down the motion of moving objects. ()
5	Complete the following sentences :
	1. A moving car is affected by the force of both air and road which act in the direction of the car movement.
	2. We can say that a train is faster than a car if the acting on the train is than that acting on the car to move the same distance.
	3. If you push each of a small ball and a big ball with the same force, the small ball moves a distance than the big ball.
	4. In tug-of-war game, the rope moves toward the group which has pulling force than the other group.
	5. The speed of a ball moving on the ground decreases gradually until it stops due to the effect of force.
	6. When you kick a ball hard, it will move for a distance but when you kick the same ball gently, it will move for a distance.
	7. If the same pulling force acts on two boxes of different sizes, the smaller box will move for a distance.
6	Give reasons for :
	When your toy car crashes into a wall, it will stop moving.
	2. When you stop pedalling during the movement of your bicycle, it slows down until it stops.
	3. If you push two similar toy cars on the same ground, one of them may travel for a longer distance than the other.
	4. If the same force acts on a small car and a truck, the small car will travel for
	a longer distance than the truck.

What happens if?  1. A car runs out of fuel on a fla	Moving ables a lone where a least of the bank
1. A car funs out of fuer on a ha	it in the same direction of its motion
	. If a car runs out of fuel, its speed incresses.
2. You push two similar balls wi	ith different forces on the ground.
gainst each other	. It is a force that is exerted when objects rub at . It is a force that slows down the mopon of mov
The following figure shows tw	vo similar toy cars are pushed to move on the
same floor, study the figure th	nen answer the questions below :
1. Which of these two cars is a	ffected Original
by a greater force ?	position (Cairo 2022)
(Give a reason for your answ	Control of the Contro
h It pushes objects away in	disd pid and ne'
eonal pullbag sariaterina goung a	W-lo-pulata
ni stoano healta l'acconti il e	35 cm →
2. Choose the correct answer	rea down to the ending the solid to be the solid of
1. If the two cars were push	ed by the same force, so
	a longer distance than car (B).
	a longer distance than car (A).
c. the two cars would mov	ve the same distance.
d. the two cars would not	
2. If you replace car (A) with	a new car which is larger than car (B), the new
	the distance that covered by car (B).
a. longer than	b. shorter than

d. twice

b. the friction force of the air.

d. the pushing gravity force.

3. The two cars during motion are affected by all the following forces, except

c. equal to

a. the pushing force.

c. the friction force of the floor.

# **LESSON FOUR**

# 

# **Energy, Work and Force**

▶ Look at the opposite picture, then choose the correct answer:

This man exerts a ...... force on the car to make it moves.

(pushing - pulling)



#### The relationship between energy, work and force:

#### Example:

- The man exerts a pushing force on the car to move it.
- So, this force transfers energy from his body to the car.
- When he moves the car, this means that he is doing work.



# From the previous example, we can conclude that:

- Force transfers energy from one object to another.
- The work done is equal to the amount of energy transferred by a force that is used to move an object.

Enables us to do Work Energy **Transfers** Force



Force and energy are different, but they are related to one another, where force is the effect that changes energy and allows it to do work.



# Check your understanding

Complete the following sentences using the words below:

(force - work)

- 1. To make an object start or stop moving, this requires
- 2. When you push a car and it starts to move, you are doing .....

relationship work

flat road صلة transfer شغل

enable us طريق مسطح related to ينتقل / يتحول تمكننا

# Activity 10 Record Evidence Like A Scientist

- ▶ In this concept, you have learned a lot about the role of balanced and unbalanced forces in starting and stopping motion.
- Now, try to think like a scientist by writing your claim, your evidence and your scientific explanation about one of the main points of this concept through the four steps you have learned in the previous concepts.

How do forces act on different objects to make the	om etart moving and ston movi
How do forces act on dilierent objects to make the	em start moving and stop movi
Step 2 My Claim	an comment distributions
	1 210/17
O di autori al sur adil da	
m his body to the car.	od voza sedalálállandisíh
ya (especial to de la companya d	her he knoves the real this ma
Step 3 My Evidence	35 602
e can conclude that and a second or second	
Enness the covert answer.	
1. If the two caps were pushilefilode of 129(20) 9	ice transfers energy from opi
amount of energy, transferred by a force that is u	re work done is equalite their
h weight the state of the state	move an object (A) ran medi
- 5 cal (8) would tack to a	
Caranas is a consultation of the consultation	Funde Transfers (C)
Chan (4) M. Saigntific Euplemation	
Step 4 My Scientific Explanation	orio
_2.316 vey/realacs.cst./4\basis.cs.cs.cs.cs.cs.cs.isia.i	
-2-15-5-4-7-5-1966-65-5-(A)	The effect@hatchanbaterpark
251( vez reglacs-cs-7,44) a novembre a distantion ob of a avialla basive	the effect (Batchangetsenar)
and factorized account of the source of the	the effect@acchangesspark
231(c.g.rcs)gcs.cs.t.(4)m.m.m.m.m.m.m.m.m.m.m.m.m.m.m.m.m.m	the effect@atehangesenach

**Review on Concept (2.1)** 

To review this concept look at the Assessment Book "Part 2: Final Revision".

In the Assessment Book:

Try to answer:

- Self-Assessment (17)
- Model Exam on Concept (2.1)

role claim

190

evidence وظيفة / دور

scientific explanation

دليل

التفسير العلمي

# **Exercises on Lesson 4**

<ul><li>Unders</li></ul>	tand O	pply	<ul><li>Higher Thin</li></ul>	iking Skills	
1 Choose the corr	ect answer :				
<ul> <li>1. All of the followa. a ball.</li> <li>2. To stop a mova. pushing fore</li> <li>3. Samir pushed</li> </ul>	wing examples ca b. a swing. ing object we can ce b. gravity forc	c. tug-c apply ae e c. soun	of-war rope. against it. d energy	d. a car.	
b. pull it with a c. pull it with a	small force in the large force in the direction opposite	e same moving same moving to its moving	direction.	by a force that is	
used to move a. energy	an object. b. friction	c. push	ing	d. gravity	
Put (🗸) or (X) :	nid a l	millil ri	er gerenne stelle		
1. If a person mo	ves a table throu	gh a distance	, there is a we	ork done. (	)
2. Lifting a book	upward needs me	ore energy tha	an pushing a	truck. (	)
3. If you try to op	en a door but you	u cannot oper	it, this mean	s that work	
is done.				ient asonot ent (	)
4. Hitting a tenni	s ball needs a pu	lling force.		(Giza 2023) <b>(</b>	)
Complete the fo	llowing sentence	es:			
	sh a table to move our body to the ta		your pushing	g force transfers	
and allows it to	o do don	e by this obje	ct. swind a m	that changes	
	e on a basketball r hand to the ball		e amount of .	transferred	
	ling ball on the gi ball in the oppos			equal to the	at 
In the opposite more work to ra (Give a reason fo	ise the weights?	e, it moves for	de) ani no	50 kg 100 kg	. [191

# Model Exam 1





Total mark	
15	

1 (A) Choose the corr	ect answer:		(5 mark
1. Mona throws her	ball up in the air so,	gravity will make the ball mov	ve backward.
a. forward.	b. upward.	c. downward. d.	Dackwaru.
a. A car hits a tree	epresents the best e e and its motion stop and a sailboat moves		
	ed to move across a a ball that falls to the		
<ol><li>The speed of the a. normal truck or c. normal truck ar</li></ol>	nly. b	more than that of the	
<ol> <li>All the following a         a. writing using a         c. kicking a ball.</li> </ol>	keyboard. b	hing force, <u>except</u> . lifting a bag. . throwing a basketball.	
(B) What happens if		ne of tug-of-war game are bala	nced
The lorces that a	are doing on the rep	(according to the movement	
			100747
			(5 marks
<ol> <li>Gravity pulls obje</li> </ol>	cts upward.		of year for
		and pushing forces is the direc	tion
of the force.		ork dann an a Destreichen is ag Australia des Institution	tt served v
		person walking on the street.	is to all A
4. If you move a cha	air through a distanc	e, there is work done.	
(B) Give a reason for	r the following:		
If you push a per	n on the table, it mov	ves for a certain distance till it	stops.

3	(A) Correct the underlined words :	(5 marks)
	1. By increasing the pushing force acting on a moving toy car, it will me for a short distance.	ove ()
	<ol> <li>Any moving object stops when a force of the same amount is applied on it in the <u>same</u> direction of its movement.</li> </ol>	()
	3. To increase the speed of the Shockwave truck, engineers installed three parachutes in it.	()
	4. A table stays without any motion due to the <u>unbalanced</u> forces that are acting on it.	()

# (B) Look at the opposite picture, then complete the following sentences:

- 1. The person in this picture uses ...... to land safely.



# Model Exam 2

# on Concept (2.1)

Total	mark
1	5

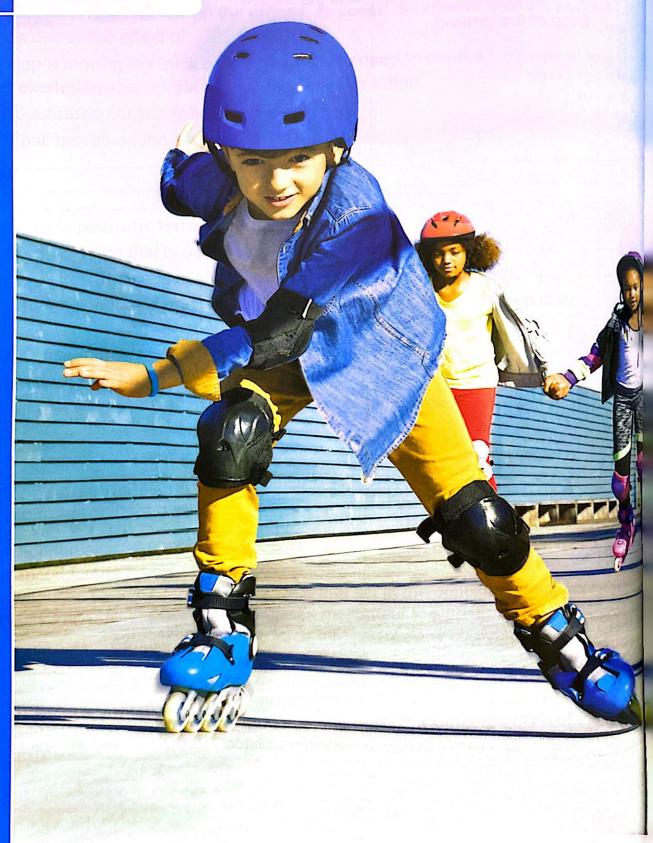
(A) Complete the followin		(5 mark
1. When we put a jet engin	e in a normal truck, its speed will	
2. The bicycle cannot move	e without a acting on it.	
<ol><li>When you push a toy ca stops due to the effect of</li></ol>	r on the ground, its speed decreases grad f force.	ually until it
	ck on the ground, you need to exert a ruck in the opposited direction.	equal to
B) Give a reason for the fo		
	lat road, its speed decreases till it stops.	
: espectase parvallot	Surelision and a surelision of the	6 1007 (8)
	iolovina I (d	1 The per
(A) Write the scientific ter	m of each of the following :	(5 mark
1. The type of force that is	used in tug-of-war game.	(
It is the force that cause	s any object falls down toward the ground.	(
2. It is the lorde that cause		
		es fast.
	sed in the Shockwave truck to allow it move	
3. It is the engine that is us	sed in the Shockwave truck to allow it move	(
3. It is the engine that is us		es fast. ( (
3. It is the engine that is us 4. It is a force that is exerte (B) What happens if?	sed in the Shockwave truck to allow it move ed when objects rub against each other.	(
3. It is the engine that is us 4. It is a force that is exerte (B) What happens if?	sed in the Shockwave truck to allow it move	(
3. It is the engine that is us 4. It is a force that is exerte (B) What happens if?	sed in the Shockwave truck to allow it move ed when objects rub against each other.	(
3. It is the engine that is us 4. It is a force that is exerte (B) What happens if?  A car and a truck are at	sed in the Shockwave truck to allow it move ed when objects rub against each other.  ffected by the same pushing force.	(
3. It is the engine that is us 4. It is a force that is exerte (B) What happens if?  A car and a truck are at	sed in the Shockwave truck to allow it move ed when objects rub against each other.  ffected by the same pushing force.  B) what suits it in column (A):	(
3. It is the engine that is us 4. It is a force that is exerte (B) What happens if? A car and a truck are at	sed in the Shockwave truck to allow it move ed when objects rub against each other.  ffected by the same pushing force.  B) what suits it in column (A):	( (
3. It is the engine that is us 4. It is a force that is exerte (B) What happens if?  A car and a truck are at  (A) Choose from column (I  (A)  1. Friction force	sed in the Shockwave truck to allow it move ed when objects rub against each other.  ffected by the same pushing force.  B) what suits it in column (A):  (B)  a. are the forces that act on any object	( (
3. It is the engine that is used. It is a force that is exerted. (B) What happens if?  A car and a truck are at	sed in the Shockwave truck to allow it move ed when objects rub against each other.  ffected by the same pushing force.  B) what suits it in column (A):  (B)  a. are the forces that act on any object moves.	((5 mark
3. It is the engine that is used. It is a force that is exerted.  (B) What happens if?  A car and a truck are at	sed in the Shockwave truck to allow it move ed when objects rub against each other.  ffected by the same pushing force.  B) what suits it in column (A):  (B)  a. are the forces that act on any object moves. b. is the force that act in the opposite d	((5 mark
3. It is the engine that is used. It is a force that is exerted. (B) What happens if?  A car and a truck are at	sed in the Shockwave truck to allow it move ed when objects rub against each other.  ffected by the same pushing force.  B) what suits it in column (A):  (B)  a. are the forces that act on any object moves. b. is the force that act in the opposite d the object's movement to stop it.	((5 mare to make it irection of
3. It is the engine that is used. It is a force that is exerted.  (B) What happens if?  A car and a truck are at	sed in the Shockwave truck to allow it move ed when objects rub against each other.  ffected by the same pushing force.  B) what suits it in column (A):  (B)  a. are the forces that act on any object moves. b. is the force that act in the opposite d the object's movement to stop it. c. is the force that causes any object face	((5 marketo make it
3. It is the engine that is used. It is a force that is exerted.  (B) What happens if?  A car and a truck are at	sed in the Shockwave truck to allow it move ed when objects rub against each other.  ffected by the same pushing force.  B) what suits it in column (A):  (B)  a. are the forces that act on any object moves. b. is the force that act in the opposite do the object's movement to stop it. c. is the force that causes any object fatoward the ground.	to make it irection of
3. It is the engine that is used. It is a force that is exerted.  (B) What happens if?  A car and a truck are at	sed in the Shockwave truck to allow it move ed when objects rub against each other.  ffected by the same pushing force.  B) what suits it in column (A):  (B)  a. are the forces that act on any object moves. b. is the force that act in the opposite d the object's movement to stop it. c. is the force that causes any object face	to make it irection of

- (B) Look at the opposite picture that shows a boy moves a car forward, then complete the following sentences:
- 1. The car moves as a result of ...... force that is applied by the boy.
- 2. During the movement of the car, it is opposed by the friction force of ......... and the friction force of the ground.



2.2

# Energy and Motion





# **Learning outcomes**

# By the end of this concept, your child will be able to:

- Investigate the forms of energy in a system or for an object.
- Apply logical reasoning to predict the types of energy for an object.
- Cite evidence to explain how energy is conserved.

# Key vocabulary

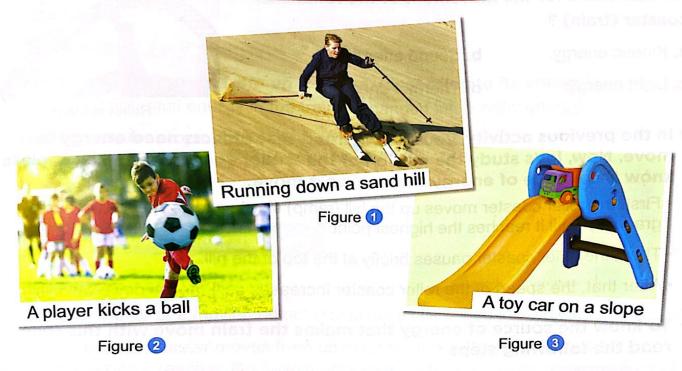
- Kinetic energy
- Potential energy
- Chemical energy
- Gravitational potential energy
- Thermal energy

# Notes For Parents On Concept [2.2]

Lessons	Activities	What you should do with your child
	Activity 1	Let your child mention some examples of objects that have kinetic energy and potential energy.
1	Activity 2	Discuss with your child the different types of energy in the roller coaster during its movement.
	Activity 3	Discuss with your child the different forms of energy and let him/her mention some examples of each of them.
	Activity 4	Explain to your child the relationship between energy and work.
2	Activity 5	Explain to your child the meaning of "potential energy" and "kinetic energy".
3	Activity 6	<ul> <li>Explain to your child that all forms of energy are classified into two main groups which are potential energy and kinetic energy.</li> <li>Discuss with your child that potential energy depends on the mass of an object and its height from the Earth's surface.</li> </ul>
S erus a	Activity 7	Let your child mention the changes of energy in some devices.
	Activity 8	Explain to your child the concept of : "energy is not created or destroyed".
4	Activity 9	Help your child to think like a scientist by answering a question about one of the main points of this concept, then write his/her claim, evidence and scientific explanation.

# **LESSON ONE**

# Activity 1 Can You Explain?



#### In the previous concept, you have learned that:

Objects need a force to move or stop and this force applied on objects needs energy to be able to do work, so how do moving objects get energy?

- The pictures above show:
- A sand surfer moves very fast down the sand hill in figure 1.
- The ball moves through the air when the player kicks it with his foot in figure 2.
- The toy car at the top of slope will not move if no force is applied on it in figure 3.

# From the previous observations, we can conclude that:

- All moving objects have a type of energy known as kinetic energy.
- Objects that do not move don't have kinetic energy but they have another type of energy known as potential energy that is stored in them. When these objects start to move, they get kinetic energy.

# In this concept, we will study:

- The meaning of energy and its basics.
- Types of energy.
- · Kinetic energy and potential energy.

hill قوة sand surfer مترلج على الرمال potential energy قوة sand surfer طاقة وضع potential energy على الرمال slope منحدر energy منحدر

# Activity 2 Roller Coasters

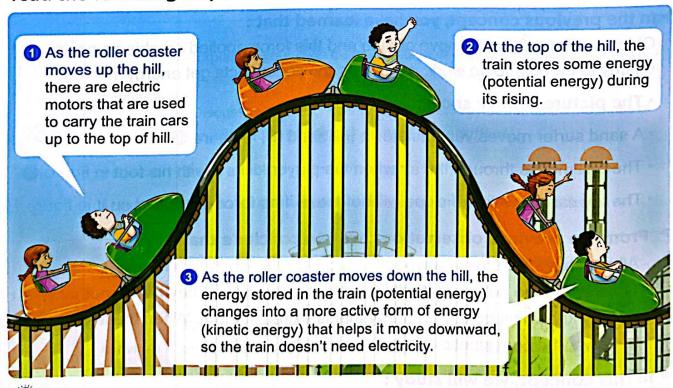
In your opinion, which of the following energies is responsible for the movement of the roller coaster (train)?

- a. Kinetic energy.
- b. Sound energy.
- c. Light energy.
- d. Thermal energy.



Roller coaster

- In the previous activity, you have learned that objects need energy to move. Now, let's study the motion of the "roller coaster" as an example to know the source of energy that makes it move.
  - First, the roller coaster moves up the hill (ramp) slowly and its speed decreases gradually until it reaches the highest point.
  - Then, the roller coaster pauses briefly at the top of the hill.
  - After that, the speed of the roller coaster increases as it moves down the hill.
- To know the source of energy that makes the train move with this speed, read the following steps:



While the roller coaster moves down the hill, the kinetic energy increases as its speed increases.

roller coaster gradually

thermal energy قطار الملاهي السريع

briefly تدریجیًا

طاقة حرارية لوقت قصير

_		 _	GY		-		-	_		
	N	О	$\sim$	<i>,</i> ,	11	ΝЛ			( )	N

# ▶ From the previous explanation, we can conclude that :

- When the roller coaster moves downward, its kinetic energy increases.
- The kinetic energy increases as the speed increases.

# What happens if ...?

- A roller coaster moves from up to down. (according to its energy).

  The stored potential energy in the train is changed into kinetic energy.
- A roller coaster stops. (according to its kinetic energy).
  Its kinetic energy becomes zero.



# Check your understanding

<b>&gt;</b> 1	Dut (	1	or (	'x'	
	rut				

and the state of t		
1. Kinetic energy of a moving object increases as its speed increases.	(	)
2. When a roller coaster moves from up to down, it has the most kinetic energy when it reaches the lowest point of the hill.	(	)
3. When the roller coaster moves downward, its kinetic energy decreases.	(	)

explanation تفسير conclude 201

# Activity 3

# What Do You Already Know About Energy and Motion?

- ► From the previous activities, you can conclude that we need energy to do all our daily activities such as running, walking and even during reading a book. So, energy is part of everything that happens in the world and everything we do.
- Examples show the importance of energy in our life:
  - We eat food to obtain energy to help us grow and move.



Energy affects objects and makes them move and change their places.



3 Energy helps in operating all electric devices.



4 Energy helps in cooking.



(5) Energy helps in lighting houses and streets.



operating

#### **Moving Energy:**

• Energy moves (transfers) from an object to another as in the example below that shows a player kicks a ball as shown in the following steps:

The kinetic energy transfers from the player's foot to the ball when he kicks it.



Then, the ball moves in the air as a result of the transfer of kinetic energy to it.



Then, the kinetic energy transfers from the ball to the goal net which vibrates as a result of the transfer of kinetic energy to it.



# Note

Any stopped object on the Earth's surface as in figure (1) has no energy. Any object at a height from the Earth's surface as in figure (2) has a special type of energy known as potential energy.





Figure (1)



# Check your understanding

#### ▶ Put (√) or (x):

- 1. Energy affects objects and makes them move and change their places.
- 2. Energy doesn't transfer from an object to another.

Try to answer: Self-Assessment (18)

transfers

kicks تنتقل

203 يركل

# **Exercises on Lesson 1**

Understand

O Apply

• Higher Thinking Skills

	- oden farmend at the	
1	Choose the correct answer:	
-	1. When a sand surfer moves do	own the hill, this means that he has, due to
1	his movement.	
	a. kinetic energy	b. stored light energy
1	c. potential energy	d. stored electrical energy
-	2. Human needs to walk fro	om one place to another.
	a. light energy	b. energy obtained from food
	c. sound energy	d. energy obtained from batteries
-	3. Electric motor in the roller coa	ster helps it to
	a. move up to the top of the hi	II.
	b. move down to the bottom of	f the hill.
	c. stop at the top of the hill.	
	d. stop at the bottom of the hill	
-	4. When an object moves down	a ramp, its stored potential energy
	a. increases.	b. doesn't change.
	c. changes to a less active for	
	d. changes to a more active fo	orm of energy. (Alexandria 2023/Assuit 2022)
•	5. When the roller coaster goes	up, its speed
	a. decreases as it goes down.	
	b. decreases as it reaches the	
	c. is more than its speed wher	
	d. increases as it reaches the	top of the hill.
þ	6. When a wheelchair and a car	go up a ramp, which of them can store some
	energy ?	1.4 1 <u></u>
	a. The wheelchair only.	b. The car only.
	c. Both of them.	d. None of them.
-	7. The roller coaster has the mos	
	a. as it goes up to the top of th	e hill.
Contract of the Contract of th	b. as it goes down the hill.	to the output with the last and middles intermined
No. of Street, or	c. when it stops at the top of the	
	d. when it stops at the bottom	
	8. When the roller coaster stops, a. doesn't change.	
	c. decreases.	b. increases.
	J. 4001040001	d. becomes zero.

<ul> <li>9. When a car moves up a ra</li> <li>a. gravity force.</li> <li>c. kinetic energy.</li> </ul>	mp, this happens due to the effect of b. balanced force.
	d. sound energy.
a. light energy.	ows objects to move is known as b. potential energy.
c. solar energy.	d. kinetic energy.
Choose from column (B) wha	it suits it in column (A) :
(A)	(B)
When a wheelchair goes down a ramp,	a. it is under the effect of balanced force, and it doesn't store energy.
2. When a wheelchair stops	b. it has only energy of motion.
at the top of a ramp,  3. When a wheelchair stops	c. it is under the effect of unbalanced force, where it loses its stored energy.
at the bottom of a ramp,	d. it is under the effect of balanced force, and it stores energy.
1	3
Put (✓) or (X) :	* 3. What you know the second of you
1. We eat food to obtain energ	gy. ( )
2. Energy doesn't transfer from	
A COURT OF THE PARTY OF THE PAR	affected by two opposite equal forces, it will not move.
A THE WAY A PROPERTY OF STATE OF THE PARTY O	Building and an
4. If a wheelchair moves hori	zontally on the ground, its energy of motion
equals zero.	(+ 2) The speed of the rollstadocatoring as it m
5. The moving objects only h	ave energy, while the objects that don't move
have no energy.	(Giza 2022) (
Write the scientific term of o	each of the following:
	e object has due to its movement. ()
•	creases when the speed of an object
increases.	(Sohag 2022) ()
Correct the underlined word	1. The upergy of the roller coaster when it move: al
1. When a roller coaster mov	es down a ramp, its kinetic energy
doesn't change.	(

2. The roller coaster when it loses its	s kinetic energy.
3. The energy of a stopped ball at the	top of a ramp starts to move down.
4. The potential energy of an object was surface.	hen it is placed at a height from the Earth's
Look at the following figure, then of the speed of the car increases we also as a stops at point (A).  b. moves from (A) to (B).  c. stops at point (C).  d. moves from (B) to (C).	
<ul><li>2. The speed of the car decreases v</li><li>a. it moves from (A) to (B).</li><li>c. its kinetic energy increases.</li></ul>	when  b. its kinetic energy doesn't change.  d. it moves from (B) to (C).
the cara. moves from (A) to (B).	b. moves from (C) to (D). d. speed increases.
	Facts about energy:

# **LESSON TWO**

Activity 4

# **Energy Basics**

▶ Observe these pictures, then put (✓) in front of the bodies that have energy.





- From the previous concept, you have learned that there is a relation between energy, force and work, where:
  - Force is the effect that changes energy to make it able to do work.
  - So, we can define energy and work as follows:

#### **Energy:**

It is the ability to do work or cause change.

#### Work:

It is a force that causes an object to move a distance.

- Example to show the relation between energy and work :
  - When a football player kicks a ball, the force of his kick causes the ball move in a different direction.
  - Thus the player does work and he consumes energy (that he had obtained from food) to move his leg.
  - So, the work done by this player causes the ball to move.



#### Facts about energy:

Energy can be stored and changed from one form into another.

#### Example:

When you hold a ball, it stores potential energy, when you let it fall down to the ground, the ball is moving where the potential energy stored in it is changed into kinetic energy.



208

basics work

relation أساسيات consumes

facts علاقة hold يستهلك

store حقائق

يخزن

- We cannot see most forms of energy but, we can see and measure what energy can do.
  - We can't see most forms of energy such as: sound energy, thermal energy, electrical energy and chemical energy.
  - · We can see and measure what energy can do.

#### Example:

When you push a wooden box and this box moves, this means that the energy transfers from you to the box and also can be measured through the distance that the box moves.

	-
٢	一区
١	一門
١	-4

# Check your understanding

Complete the following senter	ices:
-------------------------------	-------

- 1. The ability to do work is known as .....
- 2. The force that causes an object to move a distance is known as ...

#### ▶ Put (√) or (x):

1.	Energy doesn't change from one form into another form.	(	)
	When you push a wall and this wall doesn't move, this means that you do work.	(	)
3.	The person who pushes a car forward and this car moves, this means that the person consumes energy.	(	)

measure مسافة distance و209

#### **Kinetic and Potential Energy** Activity 5

Scientists classify energy into two types which are:



It is the amount of energy that is stored in an object due to its position.



#### Example:

The ball has potential energy stored in it when you lift it up away from the Earth's surface.



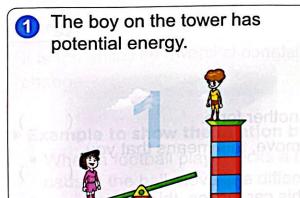
It is the energy of an object due to its motion.



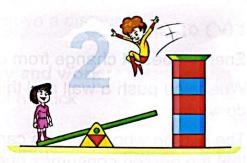
#### Example:

The ball has a kinetic energy when you let it fall down to the ground.

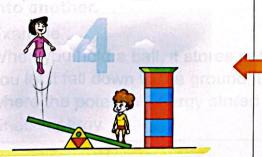
 Now, let's see an example to find out how the potential energy can be changed into kinetic energy.



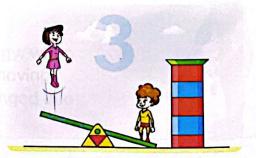
When he jumps down, his potential energy is converted into kinetic energy.



During the movement of the girl up in the air, her kinetic energy is converted gradually into potential energy.



3) The kinetic energy of the boy transfers to the girl who is standing on the seesaw and causes her to be pushed up into the air.



gradually يصنف



When an object has potential energy, so this object is ready to do work or to be active.

1	
١	一图
١	-4

# Check your understanding

nown as many property	to its motion is k	of an object due	2. The energy	
Complete the following s	entences:	b. thernal		
<ol> <li>Scientists classify energy int energy.</li> </ol>	o two types which	h are ener	rgy and	
2. The object hasenergy Earth's surface.	stored in it wher	າ you lift it up aw	ay from the	
Put (√) or (×):		hrow a stone in	5. When you t	
1. When an object is placed at	a high place, it st	ores kinetic ene	rgy. (	)
2. Any object that moves has k	inetic energy.	ree 1777 cm. Lon a certain lui	g gravity to 6. When a ball	)
	s into potential er res into kinetic er	energy change jal energy chang	oo Assassment Book	

In the Assessment Book:
Try to answer:
Self-Assessment 19

# **Exercises on Lesson 2**

O Apply

Understand

Higher Thinking Skills

1	Choose the correct answer	r:	
	1. The form of energy that i energy.	s stored in a book place	
	a. potential b. thern	nal c. light	d. sound
	The energy of an object of a sound b. there		wn as energy. d. kinetic
	energy.	d in an object due to its	position, is known as (Giza 2023/Alexandria 2022) d. chemical
	<ul><li>4. The form of energy that a a thermal</li><li>b. elect</li></ul>		nergy. d. sound
	<ul><li>5. When you throw a stone the water surface.</li><li>a. potential energy</li><li>c. gravity force</li></ul>	in a lake, theis  b. pulling for d. kinetic en	
<b>\</b>	<ol> <li>When a ball on a certain         <ul> <li>its kinetic energy char</li> <li>its potential energy ch</li> <li>its potential energy ren</li> <li>its kinetic energy remains</li> </ul> </li> </ol>	nges into potential energ anges into kinetic energ mains as it is.	gy.
	<ol> <li>A stopped object placed than the same object wh a. smaller potential energy c. smaller kinetic energy</li> </ol>	en it is placed at the gro gy b. larger pot	ential energy
2	The following table shows the type and the amount o	Samy in different situated for the same same same same same same same sam	ations. Choose from column (B) h situation in column (A):
	(A) her kinst	to the p	in (B) is standing on the
	1. Samy stops at 5 meter	a. he has a stored elec	ctrical energy.
	high 2. Samy stops on the	b. he does not have po	otential or kinetic energies.
	ground	c. he has a large amo	unt of kinetic energy.
	3. Samy walks slowly on the Earth's surface	d. he has an amount o	of potential energy.

4. Samy runs fast on the

2. .....

Earth's surface

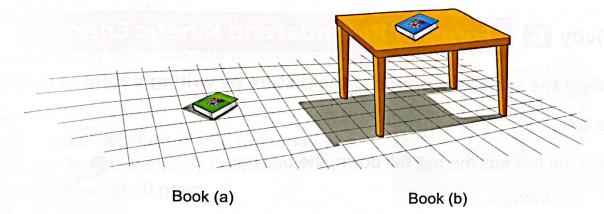
e. he has a small amount of kinetic energy.

3. .....

3	Put (V) or (X):
•	1. We can see all the forms of energy.
•	2. Energy can be stored in the form of potential energy. ( )
-	3. Any moving object has a form of energy known as kinetic energy. ( )
	(Alexandria 2023)
	4. When an object is left to fall down to the Earth's surface, its potential energy
	is changed into kinetic energy. ( )
	<ul><li>5. We can measure the distance that an object moved as a result of pushing force.</li><li>( )</li></ul>
•	6. To do work, you must push or pull an object for a certain distance. ( )
•	7. If an object has energy so, it has the ability to do work. ( )
1	Write the scientific term of each of the following :
Ť	The energy that is stored in an object due to its position at a certain
Ĭ	height from the Earth's surface. (Luxor 2023 / Cairo 2022) (
	2. The energy that the object gains due to its motion.
Ĭ	(Luxor 2023 / Minia 2022) ()
	3. The ability to do work or cause change. (Alexandria 2023 / Ismailia 2022) ()
Ĭ	4. The force that makes an object to move over a distance. (
Ĭ	5. The energy that is changed into kinetic energy when an object
Ĭ	falls down to the Earth's surface. (
	a generalist and grown to the steat of exception (2), it
5	Correct the underlined words:
1	1. The ability to do <u>force</u> or cause change is known as energy. ()
1	2. We cannot see all forms of energy, except thermal energy. ()
	3. As the object moves faster, its potential energy increases. ()
	4. The energy form stored in a stopped wooden box placed on
	a table is kinetic energy. ()
6	Complete the following sentences :
T	1. If you have the ability to push a chair, so you have
I	2. When a force moves a ball over a distance, we can say that is done.
I	3. If you let an object fall down from a high place so, its energy changes
	into kinetic energy.

its ..... energy will increase as it rises up.

# Look at the figures below, then choose the correct answer:



- According to the potential energy, which of the following statements is correct?......
  - a. The two books have the same potential energy.
  - b. Book (a) has more potential energy.
  - c. Book (b) has more potential energy.
  - d. The two books have no potential energy.
- 2. If you transfer the book (a) onto table, its potential energy will .........
  - a. increase.
- b. decrease.
- c. not change.
- d. be zero.

# 11 Look at the two opposite figures, then choose the correct answer:

- 1. In figure (a), the acrobat (1) has .....
  - a. potential energy more than that of acrobat (2).
  - b. potential energy less than that of acrobat (2).
  - c. potential energy similar to that of acrobat (2).
  - d. no potential energy like acrobat (2).

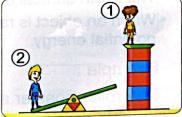


Figure (a)

- 2. In figure (b), during the rising up of the acrobat (2) into the air, his ......
  - a. potential energy decreases.
  - b. potential energy increases.
  - c. potential and kinetic energies increase.
  - d. potential and kinetic energies decrease.

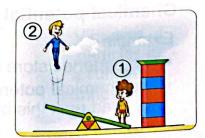


Figure (b)

## LESSON THREE

#### Forms of Potential and Kinetic Energy Activity 6

- ▶ Complete the sentences opposite the picture by writing potential or kinetic.
  - 1. The ball has ..... energy.
  - 2. When the boy lets the ball fall down, the ball has ..... energy.



- In the previous activities, you have learned that there are two categories of energy which are kinetic and potential energies.
  - In this lesson, we will study some forms of potential and kinetic energies.

Forms of potential energy

Gravitational potential energy

Chemical potential energy

#### Gravitational potential energy

- The Earth attracts objects to its surface by a force called gravitational force (gravity).
- When an object is raised up against the Earth's gravity, this object stores gravitational potential energy.

#### Example:

The roller coaster at the top of a hill stores gravitational potential energy.

#### Chemical potential energy

#### Example:

- The batteries store chemical potential energy.
- · The chemical potential energy stored in the battery is not used until this battery is connected to a device.



When a spring is compressed, it stores potential energy inside it.



Spring

216

gravity

connected الجاذبية

spring متصلة

compress زنبرك

يضغط

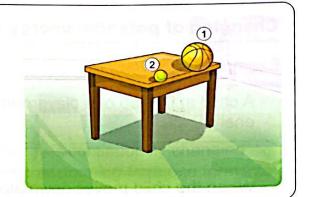
#### Factors affecting potential energy of an object:

#### Mass

By increasing the mass, the potential energy increases.

#### Example:

Ball (1) that has mass of 500 gram has a greater potential energy than ball (2) that has mass of 40 gram.

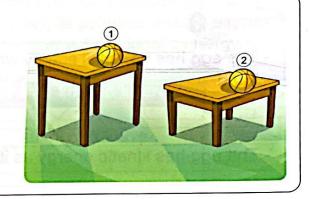


#### Height

By increasing the height from the Earth's surface, the potential energy increases.

#### Example:

Ball (1) at height 1 meter has a greater potential energy than ball 2 at height  $\frac{1}{2}$  meter.



#### Forms of kinetic energy

#### Sound energy



Movement of sound waves in the air.



#### Light energy



Movement of light waves in the air.



#### Electrical energy



Movement of electricity through wires.



#### Thermal energy





Vibration of particles in a substance during heating.



mass

sound waves

light waves موجات الصوت

vibration موجات الضوء

217

From the previous lessons, you have known that energy is transformed (changed) easily from one form into another form such as:

#### Changing of potential energy into kinetic energy:

#### Example 1 :

- A child at the top of a playground slide has potential energy.
- When the child moves down along the slide, the potential energy changes into kinetic energy.



#### Example 2 :

- The egg has potential energy when it is in the boy's hand.
- The egg has kinetic energy as it falls down.



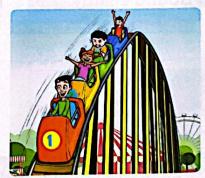


#### Check your understanding

▶ Look at the opposite picture, then complete the sentences using these words:

(kinetic - potential)

- 1. When the roller coaster is at the top of the hill, it stores ..... energy.
- 2. When the roller coaster goes down the hill, its potential energy changes into ..... energy.



#### Activity 7 Types of Energy

. Energy is found everywhere around us.

**Energy can be** 

#### Transferred

- Energy is continuously changing and transforming from one form into another form.

Transformed (changed)

- Energy is transferred from one place to another.

#### Example:

When you kick a ball, kinetic energy of your leg is transferred to the ball.

#### Example:

When the roller coaster goes down the hill, its potential energy is transformed into kinetic energy.

#### Some changes of potential energy into kinetic energy

The same	riches - this manne that	Energy changes			
all	Example	From	Into		
Flashlight		Chemical energy stored in batteries.	Light energy and thermal energy (heat).		
Gas oven		Chemical energy stored in natural gas.	Thermal energy.		
Spring-powered car toy		Potential energy stored in the spring wire.	Kinetic energy, sound energy and thermal energy.		
Real car		Chemical energy stored in gasoline.	Kinetic energy.		

oven

natural gas فرن

gasoline غاز طبیعی

- From the previous explanation, we can conclude that :
- Energy can be stored in many different forms.
- New energy cannot be created and also existing energy cannot be destroyed.

- The food you eat also stores chemical energy.
- When you eat food, your digestive system breaks down the food and changes it into energy stored in your body.





#### Check your understanding

#### ▶ Complete the following table :

THE BUILTING PARTIES	Energy changes		
Example	From	Into	
1. Electric fan :	Electrical energy	Kinetic energy	
2. Door bell :	Electrical energy		
3. Radio:	Chemical energy	Sound energy	
4. Electric lamp :	A a loystored in natural gas of strong stron	QAIT he following example	

In the Assessment Book: Try to answer: Self-Assessment (20)

# **Exercises on Lesson 3**

Understand	O Apply	Higher Thinking Ski	IIs
Choose the correct answ	ver:		
1. A ball at the top of a hil	I stores energ	y. Sa s baues bus yease	
a. sound b. ligh	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	- X	
2. The stored energy in a turned on.	battery of a flashlig	ht changes into,	when it is
<ul><li>a. chemical energy</li><li>c. light energy</li></ul>		nd energy ential energy	
3. All the following examp	les store chemical e	energy, except	
	ural gas. c. a ba	1,23,3	essed spring.
<ol> <li>Energy can do all the formal.</li> <li>It can be stored in an b. It can be transferred</li> </ol>	n object. from an object to ar	nother one.	
c. It can be transformed			
<ul> <li>d. It can be destroyed a</li> </ul>			invested .
<ul><li>5. If an object stops at a confalls down, this means to a. its potential energy with the b. its kinetic energy will c. its stored potential energy.</li></ul>	that vill be destroyed bef be destroyed after	fore two hours. two hours.	vo hours then
d. its stored kinetic ener	ray will change into	potential energy.	
6. All the following exampl	es have stored pote	ential energy, except	(\$VIES)
a. a stopped roller coas	그들이 하나 있었다. 그 경우에는 그리다면 하면 하고 한다면 있었다. 전에 나를 보다면 하나 그 모든	aryy cannot be offered	
b. a moving car on a flat	Toau.		
<ul><li>c. a battery of a car.</li><li>d. a compressed spring</li></ul>	of a toy		
7. All the following example		The state of the s	
a. light waves moving the			
b. sound waves moving	the state of the s		
c. stored chemical energ	The same of the sa	Collianievam uit Sau	
d. water particles movem			
3. The potential energy of a	in object depends o	n (and egiterle	(Call 0 2022)
a. its mass only.	(I. I		
b. its height from the Ear		won, took phase would been	
c. its mass and its height	irom the Earth's st	inace.	
d. its temperature.	Parkid Altrace	ranga na saga nyan nana	(
<ol> <li>The type of potential energy</li> <li>a. chemical b. therm</li> </ol>			tential energy.

a. light energy.	s of kinetic energy, <u>except</u> b. chemical energy.	
c. sound energy.	d. electrical energy.	
1. All types of energy can be a. light energy and sound b. chemical energy and c. potential energy and kind. magnetic energy and to choose from column (B) w	electrical energy.  netic energy.  hermal energy.  (Cairo 2)	022
(A)	Carrier collowing examples store chemical energy (B) d	
<ol> <li>Sound energy</li> <li>Light energy</li> <li>Thermal energy</li> <li>Stored chemical energy in food</li> <li>Stored chemical energy in a battery</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>a. changes into another form of energy that can be stored inside the human body.</li> <li>b. when it reaches our ears, it causes hearing.</li> <li>c. changes into electrical energy in a flashlight.</li> <li>d. is produced from electric heater.</li> <li>e. when it reaches the nose, it causes smelling.</li> <li>f. when it reaches our eyes, it causes vision.</li> <li>3</li></ul>	
Put ( v ) or (x):  1. New energy cannot be compressed spring stops	reated, but existing energy can be destroyed. ( pres potential energy. (	)
<ol><li>As the height of an object energy increases.</li></ol>	ct from the Earth's surface increases, its potential (Suez 2023) (	)
	e transformed into potential energy.	)
5. Light waves are form of	The state of the s	)
	ent of electricity through a wire. (Suez 2023) (	1

8. In gas oven, the chemical energy is changed into thermal energy.

9. Objects that have the same masses and placed at the same height,

compress a toy spring.

have the same potential energy.

1	Write the scientific term of each of the following:	
	1. It is the stored potential energy in a car battery.	()
1	<ul><li>2. It is a form of kinetic energy that can move through the air ar</li></ul>	nd
	we can see it.	()
	3. It is a form of kinetic energy due to vibrations of particles	
	in a substance as it heats up.	()
•	4. It is a form of potential energy that pulls objects towards the	220
	TERMINE COM IMPRINGED IN LARGE REPORT DESCRIPTION OF THE PROPERTY OF THE PROPE	()
1	Correct the underlined words :	विकास विकास ।
	1. When an object falls from a certain height, its stored potentia	al energy changes
	into chemical energy.	()
	2. The energy that is resulted due to the vibration of particles in	a substance
	as it heats up, known as sound energy.	()
	3. As the height of an object from the Earth's surface decreases	S,
	its potential energy increases.	()
	4. Thermal, chemical, electrical and light energies are forms of	kinetic
	energy.	()
	0.10.37.	
		ical
	5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemi	ical ()
	5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemi energy.	()
	<ul><li>5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.</li><li>6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the</li></ul>	()
	<ul> <li>5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.</li> <li>6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the (Alexandre)</li> </ul>	() ermal energy.
	<ul> <li>5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.</li> <li>6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the (Alexandr</li> </ul> Complete the following sentences:	() ermal energy. ia 2022) ()
	5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.  6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the (Alexandre)  Complete the following sentences:  1. Among the forms of potential energy	() ermal energy. ia 2022) ()
	5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.  6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the (Alexandre)  Complete the following sentences:  1. Among the forms of potential energy	() ermal energy. ia 2022) () nergies, while
	5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.  6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the (Alexandre)  Complete the following sentences:  1. Among the forms of potential energy	() ermal energy. ia 2022) () nergies, while
	5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.  6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the (Alexandre)  Complete the following sentences:  1. Among the forms of potential energy	() ermal energy. ia 2022) () nergies, while
	5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.  6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the (Alexandre)  Complete the following sentences:  1. Among the forms of potential energy	() ermal energy. ia 2022) () nergies, while potential 2/Kafr El-Sheikh 2022)
	<ul> <li>5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.</li> <li>6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the (Alexandr)</li> <li>Complete the following sentences: <ul> <li>1. Among the forms of potential energy</li></ul></li></ul>	() ermal energy. ia 2022) () nergies, while potential 2/Kafr El-Sheikh 2022) energy.
	5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.  6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the (Alexandre)  Complete the following sentences:  1. Among the forms of potential energy	() ermal energy. ia 2022) () nergies, while potential 2/Kafr El-Sheikh 2022) energy.
	<ul> <li>5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.</li> <li>6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the (Alexandr)</li> <li>6 Complete the following sentences: <ul> <li>1. Among the forms of potential energy</li></ul></li></ul>	() ermal energy. fia 2022) () nergies, while potential 2/Kafr El-Sheikh 2022) energy. es such as
	<ul> <li>5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.</li> <li>6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the (Alexandr)</li> <li>6 Complete the following sentences: <ul> <li>1. Among the forms of potential energy</li></ul></li></ul>	() ermal energy. ia 2022) () nergies, while potential 2/Kafr El-Sheikh 2022) energy. es such as
	<ul> <li>5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.</li> <li>6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the (Alexandr)</li> <li>6 Complete the following sentences: <ul> <li>1. Among the forms of potential energy</li></ul></li></ul>	() ermal energy. fia 2022) (  nergies, while  2/Kafr El-Sheikh 2022) energy. es such as  nergy, while
	<ul> <li>5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.</li> <li>6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the (Alexandr).</li> <li>Complete the following sentences: <ol> <li>1. Among the forms of potential energy</li></ol></li></ul>	() ermal energy. ia 2022) () nergies, while potential 2/Kafr El-Sheikh 2022) energy. es such as nergy, while
	5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.  6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the (Alexandr)  6. Complete the following sentences:  1. Among the forms of potential energy	() ermal energy. ia 2022) () nergies, while potential 2/Kafr El-Sheikh 2022) energy. es such as nergy, while
	5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.  6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the (Alexandr)  Complete the following sentences:  1. Among the forms of potential energy and energy and energy is a form of kinetic energy.  2. The energy which is stored in a ball at the top of a hill is energy.  3. Thermal energy is considered as one of the forms of energy.  4. Some forms of kinetic energy travel in air in the form of wave and energies.  5. Electrical energy is changed in loudspeakers into energy.  6. In the electric bell, energy changes into energy.  7. The chemical energy in the battery of a flashlight can be changed energies.	() ermal energy. fia 2022) ()  nergies, while  mergies, while  2/Kafr El-Sheikh 2022) mergy. mergy. mergy, while  ergy, while  ergy. manged into
	5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.  6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the (Alexandr)  6 Complete the following sentences:  1. Among the forms of potential energy and energy and energy is a form of kinetic energy.  2. The energy which is stored in a ball at the top of a hill is energy.  3. Thermal energy is considered as one of the forms of energy and energy is considered as one of the form of wave and energies.  5. Electrical energy is changed in loudspeakers into energy.  6. In the electric bell, energy changes into energy.  7. The chemical energy in the battery of a flashlight can be changed energies.  8. In gas oven, energy changes into energy.	() ermal energy. fia 2022) () hergies, while finergies, while finergies, while finergies, while finergy. finergy. finergy, while finergy. finerg
	5. A car battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical energy.  6. A fan turns the chemical energy stored in natural gas into the (Alexandr)  Complete the following sentences:  1. Among the forms of potential energy and energy and energy is a form of kinetic energy.  2. The energy which is stored in a ball at the top of a hill is energy.  3. Thermal energy is considered as one of the forms of energy.  4. Some forms of kinetic energy travel in air in the form of wave and energies.  5. Electrical energy is changed in loudspeakers into energy.  6. In the electric bell, energy changes into energy.  7. The chemical energy in the battery of a flashlight can be changed energies.	() ermal energy. fia 2022) () hergies, while finergies, while finergies, while finergies, while finergy. finergy. finergy, while finergy. finerg

energy.	ogether, the kinetic energy changes into
	energies which are considered as form
	to be operated and changes it intoforms of kinetic energy.
Give reasons for :	
Electric lamp produces different for	orms of energy.
2. On winding up the spring of a toy	car, then let it free, the car moves.
What happens if ?	vomination up, material de count de co
1. You operate a washing machine.	(according to the change of energy)
2. A boy moves down the slide.	(according to the change of energy)
<ol><li>You switch on an electric lamp.</li></ol>	(according to the change of energy)
3. You switch on an electric lamp.	(according to the change of energy)
Cross out the odd word :	
Cross out the odd word :  1. Sound energy – Electrical energy –	Thermal energy – Chemical energy. (
Cross out the odd word :  1. Sound energy – Electrical energy –	
Cross out the odd word :  1. Sound energy – Electrical energy –	Thermal energy – Chemical energy. (ectrical energy – Thermal energy. (
Cross out the odd word : 1. Sound energy – Electrical energy – 2. Sound energy – Light energy – El	Thermal energy – Chemical energy. (ectrical energy – Thermal energy. (
Cross out the odd word:  1. Sound energy – Electrical energy –  2. Sound energy – Light energy – Electrical energy – Electrica	Thermal energy – Chemical energy. (ectrical energy – Thermal energy. (
Cross out the odd word:  1. Sound energy – Electrical energy –  2. Sound energy – Light energy – Electrical energy – Electrica	Thermal energy – Chemical energy. (ectrical energy – Thermal energy. (hoose the correct answer :
Cross out the odd word:  1. Sound energy – Electrical energy –  2. Sound energy – Light energy – Electrical energy.  a. potential energy.  both potential and kinetic energies.	Thermal energy – Chemical energy. (
Cross out the odd word:  1. Sound energy – Electrical energy –  2. Sound energy – Light energy – Electrical energy – Electrica	Thermal energy – Chemical energy. (
Cross out the odd word:  1. Sound energy – Electrical energy –  2. Sound energy – Light energy – Electrical energy energ	Thermal energy – Chemical energy. (
Cross out the odd word:  1. Sound energy – Electrical energy –  2. Sound energy – Light energy – Electrical energy energ	Thermal energy – Chemical energy. (
Cross out the odd word:  1. Sound energy – Electrical energy –  2. Sound energy – Light energy – Electrical energy energy energy energy – Electrical energy	Thermal energy – Chemical energy. (
Cross out the odd word:  1. Sound energy – Electrical energy –  2. Sound energy – Light energy – Electrical energy energ	Thermal energy – Chemical energy. (
Cross out the odd word:  1. Sound energy – Electrical energy –  2. Sound energy – Light energy – Electrical energy energ	Thermal energy – Chemical energy. (
Cross out the odd word:  1. Sound energy – Electrical energy –  2. Sound energy – Light energy – Electrical energy energ	Thermal energy – Chemical energy. (

#### **LESSON FOUR**

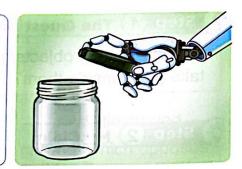
#### Activity 8

#### **Easy Life Tool**

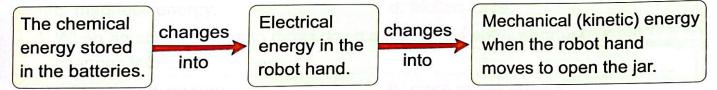
- You have learned a lot about different forms of energy and how they can transform from one form into another.
- Now, you can use this knowledge to design a tool that helps us to do work.

#### Example:-

- The tool: A robot hand
- Its function:
   Opening the jar cap that it is hard to be opened.
- The source of energy:
   The robot gets power from batteries when it is turned on.



#### The changes of forms of energy inside the robot:

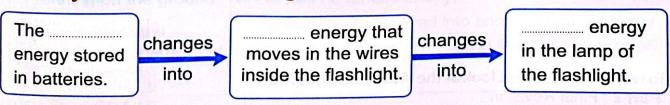


- From the previous explanation, we can conclude that :
  - Energy is not created or destroyed when transferred from the battery to the robot hand.
  - Energy is converted from one form (chemical energy) to another form of energy (mechanical energy) when the robot hand opens the jar.



#### Check your understanding

▶ Complete the following diagram that shows the changes of energy when you switch on a flashlight :



## **Activity 9** Record Evidence like A Scientist

- ▶ In this concept, you have learned about energy, motion, forms of potential energy and kinetic energy, and energy transformation in engines.
- Now, try to think like a scientist by writing your claim, your evidence and your scientific explanation about one of the main points of this concept through the four steps you have learn in the previous concepts.

How do moving objects get energy and what are the clake place inside them?	hanges of energy that
Step (2) My Claim	he source of energy:
Step (2) My Claim	THE REPORT OF THE PROPERTY OF
2.0000000000000000000000000000000000000	minor to sugarifica
	eulenim 5 daan
Step 3 My Evidence	Control Datols Africa
nei adi nago of eavom	eril baltarias l
Cross carting account of the field abudance account college	classes and constant
A count energy - Electronic benefit desired belong the	Energy is not created on
So Donnov-Cerrot-Service Sans	.bnsrt fodor ert
Step 4 My Scientific Explanation	monjast-eumop al voncin
Li Mazen has a lon smorthado porgo basel todor out a	mechanical ékergy) whe
a, potential chargy, and her working to the	
TO TE DESCRIPTOR STORY OF THE PROPERTY OF THE	
Review on Concept (2.2)	In the Assessment Book
A series of the	Try to answer: Self-Assessment 21
To review this concept look at the <b>Assessment Book</b> " <b>Part 2</b> : Final Revision".	Model Exam on Concepts     (2.1) & (2.2)

226 evidence

دليل claim

افتراض

## **Exercises on Lesson 4**

	<ul><li>Understand</li></ul>	O Apply	Higher T	hinking Skills		
1	Choose the correct answer	er:	gy into some i i del	ren Britania escar		
1	1. Chemical energy can be	e stored in	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	(Giza 2022)		
	a. food only.		b. battery only.			
	c. television and food.		d. food and bat	tery.		
	<ol><li>Humans cannot live with activities.</li></ol>	nout to ob	tain the needed e	energy for doing their		
	a. reading books		b. driving cars			
	c. watching television		d. eating food			
•	3. When you jump high, th	e force affectin	g you must be	Lheniado galaria		
	a. balanced. b. u	ınbalanced.	c. created.	d. destroyed.		
57	4. The force that is found to its movement is known		ing car and the gr	ound, which opposes		
	a. pushing force.		b. electrical ene	ergy.		
	c. magnetic energy.		d. friction force.			
•	5. When an object begins changes into	to move down a	a hill, the potential	energy stored in it		
	a. less active energy.		b. more active	energy.		
	c. light energy.		d. electrical ene	ergy. I votana ani izi i		
	Choose from column (B) w	hat suits it in	column (A) :	(Cairo 2022)		
	(A)		(B)	Diba ya Albani		
	1. Food	a. It can be tra	ansformed into po	tential energy.		
	2. Kinetic energy	b. He has only	kinetic energy.	- 1. Food burne inside		
	3. Potential energy	c. It is the source of energy for humans.				
	4. When a child is	d. It is the stored energy in an object.				
	running on the ground.	. e. He has no kinetic energy.				
	5. When a child is standing on the ground without moving.	is f. It cannot be transferred into another form of energy. he ground				

E	Put (//) or (x):		
	Orange, potato and battery contain stored chemical energy.	(	)
	2. A car does work when it moves from one place to another.	(	)
	3. Burning of food inside our bodies produces energy that allow us to do		
	our activities.	(	)
	4. Transformation of potential energy into kinetic energy during your sliding	down	on
	a slide, proves that the energy can be created but cannot be destroyed.	uos (	)
•	5. The stored kinetic energy changes into potential energy, when the grav	ity pul	ls
	a ball in the air back down to the ground.	(	)
•	6. Energy obtained from food is important for your body to move and do o	differer	nt
	activities.	) 3. b	)
	7. When you are jumping to a certain height, the mass of your body does	n't affe	ect
	your potential energy.	a p	)
	Write the scientific term of each of the following:	11.0	
	1. The type of fuel that is used inside the car to obtain kinetic energy. (	rIVV , č	)
	2. The energy that is stored in both food and batteries. (	11.15	)
	3. The energy that is stored in your body during your jumping into the air.		
	(		)
	4. The energy that is produced when an object begins to move. (		)
	5 What happens if ?		
	1. Food burns inside the human body.		
	tend energy principle of the state of the st	.,	
	non a collid is It lis the stored enemy in an object	W D	
	2. You put a battery inside a flashlight, then you switch it on.		
	(according to the change o	f energ	gy).
		,,,,,,,,,	

## 6 Write each of the following words in front of the suitable sentence below:

#### (Flashlight - Gas oven - Food)

- 1. Its burning changes the chemical energy into kinetic energy inside (.....) our bodies.
- 2. It changes chemical energy into thermal energy to be used in cooking. (.....)
- 3. It changes chemical energy into light and thermal energies.

#### Complete the following sentences below pictures:



1. Batteries inside

the radio store

energy.

.....potential

changes into



changes



2. .... energy in the wires in all and all produced inside the radio.

3. ..... energy from the radio speaker.

## **Model Exam** 1



#### on Concept (2.2)

Tot	al	mark
-	1	5

1	(A) Choose the correct an	swer:	(5 marks)
		down a ramp, its stored potential energy	
	<ul><li>2. The form of energy that</li><li>a. thermal energy.</li><li>c. light energy.</li></ul>	can be seen isb. electrical energy. d. sound energy.	
	<ul><li>3. All the following example</li><li>a. food.</li><li>c. a battery.</li></ul>	es store chemical energy, <u>except</u> b. gasoline. d. a compressed spring.	
	<ul><li>4. When you jump high in a. balanced.</li><li>c. created.</li></ul>	the air, the forces affecting you must beb. unbalanced. d. destroyed.	
	(B) Give a reason for the f Both the Sun and electric	following : lamp produce two forms of energy.	
2	(A) Put (✓) or (X):		(5 marks)

# (A) Put ((/) or (X): The objects that don't move have no energy. To do work, you must push or pull an object through a certain distance. Light waves is a form of potential energy. Orange, potato and car battery contain stored chemical energy.

#### (B) Complete the following sentences below pictures:



1. Batteries inside the radio store ......potential energy.

2. ..... energy in the wires inside the radio.

3. ..... energy produced from the radio speaker.

_	-	ICC	CV	AN	JD	MO	TION
-	- 1		$\mathbf{c}$	A	AD.	MU	IIOI

(A) Correct the underlined words:	(5 marks)
1. When an object falls down, it has more active form of energy	
known as potential energy.	()
2. Sound energy produced from the gas oven is used in cooking	food.
l Commencer and the first training and ment years of	()
3. A battery stores a form of kinetic energy known as chemical	
energy.	()
4. Gasoline contains electrical potential energy.	
(B) What happens if ?	
A stopped ball at the top of a slope starts to move down.	
(according to the cha	nge of its energy)
	h esaed) (A) 📆

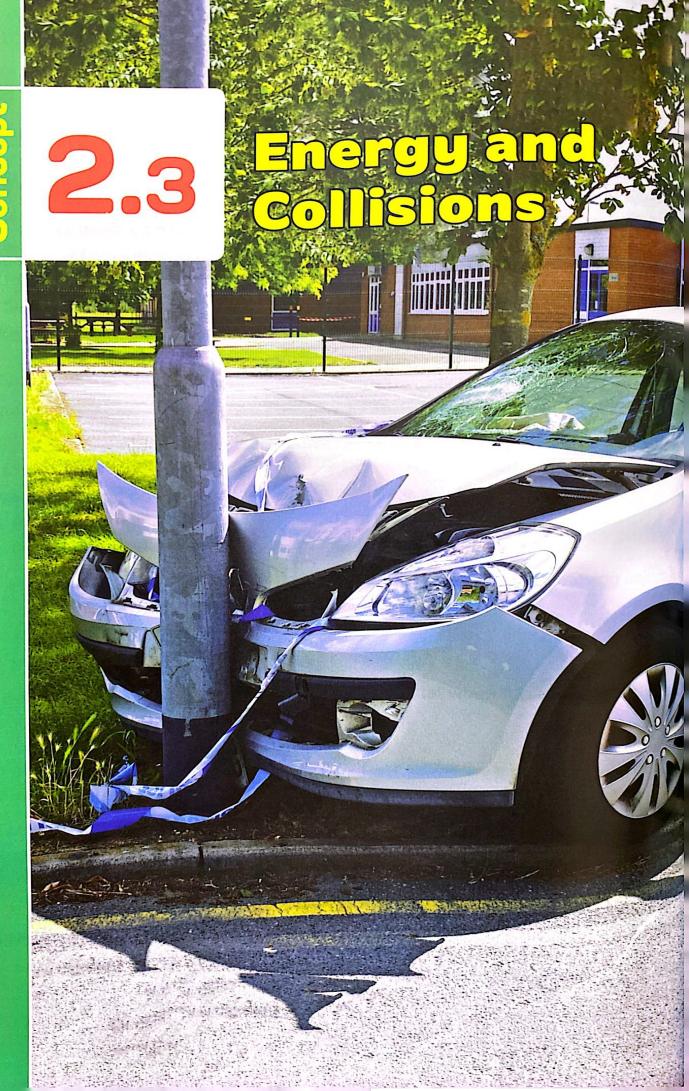
# **Model Exam** 2



## on Concept (2.2)

1	(A) Write the scientific term of	each of the following:	(5 marks)
	1. The form of energy that the o	object has due to its movement.	()
	2. The energy that is used to op	perate all electric devices.	e v()
	3. The form of energy that is sto		
		ontains electrical potential energy	= <b>(</b> )
	4. The energy that is stored in bo	oth food and batteries.	()
	g, thermal energy,		
	(B) Cross out the odd word:	om of shalled option of a stopped state to mo	
	Sound energy – Electrical energy	- Thermal energy - Chemical energ	jy. (
2	(A) Choose the correct answer	• p-a compressed spring.	(5 marks
		d without moving, so you have	
	a. the most kinetic energy.	b. no kinetic energy.	
	c. the most potential energy.	d. the least light energy.	
	All the following forms of ene except	rgy do not affect the movement of	a moving object,
	a. sound energy.	b. light energy.	
	c. electric energy.	d. kinetic energy.	
	<ul><li>3. The most potential energy sto</li><li>a. moving on the ground.</li><li>b. at the top of a hill.</li><li>c. standing without movemen</li><li>d. at the bottom of a hill.</li></ul>	t on the ground.	Hatarese (
	<ol> <li>The stored energy in a batter turned on.</li> </ol>	y of a flashlight changes into	, when it is
	a. chemical energy.	b. sound energy.	
	c. light energy.	d. potential energy.	
	(B) What happens if ?		
	You switch on an elecric lamp.	(according to the change of ene	ergy).
	notendal actions	The costs	DUSTRIES FOR

(A) Put (V) or (X):	(5 mai	rks)
1. As the height of an object from the Earth's surface increases, its potentia	ıl	
energy decreases.	(	)
2. Energy doesn't transfer from an object to another.	(	)
3. New energy cannot be created, but existing energy can be destroyed.	(	)
4. Burning of food inside our bodies produces energy that allow us to do ou	r	
activities.	(	)
(B) Give a reason for the following:		
A bird stops on a tree has energy.		
		,



Scanned with CamScanner



#### Learning outcomes

## By the end of this concept, your child will be able to:

- Analyze and interpret data to describe how the speed and mass of objects relate to changes observed in a collision.
- Construct an explanation based on evidence and logical reasoning to describe energy transfer in a collision.
- Apply mathematical thinking to organize data to represent patterns related to mass, speed and the energy of objects.

#### Key vocabulary

- Collision
- Mass
- Speed

## Notes For Parents On Concept [2.3]

Lessons	Activities	What you should do with your child
10 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 00 0	Activity 1	Discuss with your child that faster and heavier objects have more energy than slower and lighter ones.
1	Activity 2	Help your child to know that kinetic energy can transfer from one object to another.
	Activity 3	Help your child to find out some online sources to learn more about the importance of seatbelts and airbags during accidents.
	Activity 4	Help your child to know the relation between speed, distance and time.
2	Activity 5	Discuss with your child the relation between the speed and kinetic energy of an object that moves on a ramp and the angle of inclination.
	Activity 6	Discuss with your child the meaning of collision and let him/her mention some examples of collision between objects.
3	Activity 7	Discuss with your child the effect of speed on collision between objects.
	Activity 8	Let your child to do a simple experiment to find out the relation between force, speed and kinetic energy of a moving object.
4	Activity 9	Discuss with your child the effect of mass on collision between objects.
	Activity 10	Discuss with your child how kinetic energy transfers between objects.

## **LESSON ONE**

Activity 1

Can You Explain?

The truck (heavier object) has:

- More mass
- More speed
- More energy



The small car (lighter object) has:

- Less mass
- Less speed
- Less energy

#### What happens to objects when they collide with each other?

- In the example above, if the truck is the faster object it has more energy than the car which is the slower object.

Therefore, during collision, the object that has more energy (the truck) causes more damage than that has less energy (the car).

#### Example of collision:

#### A wrecking ball:

- It is a very heavy steel ball that swings on a cable.
- It is used to collide with walls of a building to help construction workers knock down walls or parts of buildings.



Wrecking ball

#### In this concept, we will study:

- Collision of objects.
- · Basics of speed.
- Energy and collision.
- The effect of speed and mass on collision.
- Energy conversions during a collision.

heavier
lighter
Collision

swing

## Activity 2

#### **Collision**

D	Look a	t this	picture,	then	put	(1	or	(x)	
---	--------	--------	----------	------	-----	----	----	-----	--

- 1. The ball transfer its kinetic energy to the bat. ( )
- 2. The ball will move in different direction, when the bat hits it. (



)

#### **Collision in cricket:**

- · A cricket is a popular game all over the world.
- · In cricket, a player uses a wooden bat to hit a ball.
- The cricket player holds a bat and moves it as the ball comes towards him at high speed to collide with the bat.



#### ▶ What happens to the energy of the moving bat when it hits the moving ball?

- The bat transfers its kinetic energy to the ball.
- Then, the speed of the ball increases and the ball returns back in a different direction.
- This collision produces a popping sound and the player would feel the bat hitting the ball.



#### Check your understanding

#### ▶ Put (√) or (x):

- After collision between a ball and a bat, the direction of the ball will not change.
- During collision between a ball and a bat, the kinetic energy transfers from the bat to the ball.

bat hits transfer مضرب popular يضرب popping sound ينقل

صوت فرقعة

#### Activity 3

#### **Watching Objects Collide**

#### What happens to the driver's body when the car stops suddenly?

- The driver's body continues to move forward where the objects that are in motion stay in motion until something stops them.
- But, What are the safety equipment that keep the driver and passengers in their places?

#### safety equipment used during collision of cars:



#### Seatbelts:

They are used in cars to keep the driver and also the passengers from moving forward when the car stops suddenly, so seatbelts have saved thousands of lives.





#### Airbags:

#### Their structure:

Airbags are made up of thin nylon material folded into the steering wheel, seats, dashboard or doors.

#### Idea of operation:

#### **During collision**

- Airbags inflate automatically when sensors in the car detect a crash.
- A sensor tells the airbags to inflate and fill with a gas to provide a soft cushion.



#### After collision

 Airbags deflate almost as fast as they inflate, because they have holes (vents) to allow them to deflate, so the driver can get out of the car.



#### Their importance:

- Airbags slow the speed of the driver's motion forward.
- Airbags absorb the energy of the passengers on collision.

seatbelt airbags

inflate حزام الأمان absorb وسائد هوائية

suddenly وسائل الأمان suddenly

steering wheel فجأه dashboard تنتفخ sensor تمتص

cushion عجلة القيادة passengers deflate حساس

وسادة راكبين تنكمش

239

## Give a reason for ...

#### Airbags deflat quickly after few seconds of collision.

- Because they contain small holes (vents), through which the gas comes out, so the driver can get out of the car.

#### Collisions between trains and cars:

- There are many accidents in which a train hits a car that may be stuck on the train tracks.
- Trains are much larger than cars. Also, trains can travel at a high speed.
- It is more dangerous, as the force of the collision between the car and train increases.





#### Check your understanding

#### ▶ Complete the following sentences:

1	Safety equipment of	f cars	during	collision include	and	
	Salety equipment		uu9		 ۵	

- 2. Airbags are made up of thin ..... material.
- 3. In cars, ..... protect passengers during collision where they inflate automatically when sensors in the car detect a crash.

In the Assessment Book: Try to answer: Self-Assessment (22)

## **Exercises on Lesson 1**

	<ul><li>Understand</li><li>O App</li></ul>	ply ● Hi	gher Thinking Skills
Ī	Choose the correct answer:		
	When objects collide with each of a. time     b. distance	other, is trai c. energy	nsferred between them. d. nothing
	<ul><li>2. The object that has the most kin</li><li>a. the fastest and lightest</li><li>c. the fastest and heaviest</li></ul>	etic energy, is b. the slowest a d. the slowest a	and lightest
	A wrecking ball is made of      a. plastic. b. nylon.	c. steel.	d. wood.
	In cricket game, the bat transfers     a. kinetic	s its energy c. thermal	to the ball. d. chemical
	<ul><li>5. Collisions usually produce</li><li>a. solar energy.</li><li>c. gravitational potential energy.</li></ul>	b. sound energ	Single British San
	<ul> <li>6. When the cricket bat hits the bal speed</li> <li>a. doesn't change – doesn't charb. doesn't change – changes.</li> <li>c. changes – doesn't change.</li> <li>d. changes – changes.</li> </ul>	nge.	and the ball
	<ol> <li>Seatbelts work when the car</li> <li>a. decreases its speed gradually.</li> <li>c. suddenly stops.</li> </ol>	b. increases its	speed gradually.
	<ul><li>8. If there is nothing to stop a movir</li><li>a. stay in motion.</li><li>c. stop after few minutes.</li></ul>	b. stop after fev	ject will v hours. v seconds.
	<ol> <li>When a car that moves forward s</li> <li>a. backward.</li> <li>b. forward.</li> </ol>	c. upward.	d. downward.
	40 Aishana in the same of California		(Cairo 2023)
	<ul><li>10. Airbags in the car are folded into</li><li>a. steering wheel.</li><li>c. doors.</li></ul>	b. dashboard.	too of coop at looks

#### Choose from column (B) what suits it in column (A):

THE RESERVE AND ADDRESS OF THE PARTY OF THE	E Tactario (
(A)	(B)
Wrecking ball     Cricket bat	<ul><li>a. it is one of the safety equipment in cars that is inflated with a gas during crashes.</li><li>b. it changes its sound energy into light energy.</li></ul>
3. Seatbelt	c. it is used to hit a ball during playing.
4. Airbag	d. it is one of the safety equipment in cars that keep passengers in their places during crashes.
reans are much larger than	e. it is used to hit a wall during destruction of a building
Put (✓) or (X) :	5. Collisions ysually produce
	the ball, its potential energy transfers to the ball. (
2. Seatbelt is one of the sa	
	two cars, the potential energy transfers from
the faster car to the slov	
	rbags deflate as fast as they inflate. (
	ery big tree, the kinetic energy of the car transfers
into the tree.	changes – doesn't change.
Write the scientific term of	of each of the following :
1. A heavy steel ball that s	wings on a cable and is used in destruction
of parts of buildings.	li zecaetoni .d .ylisubatg beege (Luxor 2023) (
2. Safety equipment used t	to prevent car passengers from moving
forward when the car sto	a min transfer Programme class as Browners or many
	to provide soft cushion when it is inflated
	during collision of cars.
네이지 않은 얼마 판매를 하고 하는 데 하다면 하다.	airbags and allow them to deflate fast after
collision.	a occloward b forward c upward
Correct the underlined wo	
1. A fast and heavy object	has more potential energy than a slow and
light object.	
2. Football is used to collid	e with buildings to knock down their walls.

3. When a train at a high speed hits a car, the train gets more d	lamage. ()
4. As a result of hitting the ball with the wooden bat, the speed	
the ball doesn't change.	aigrono ()
5. Seatbelts absorb the energy of the passengers during collision	
when inflated. (Soh	ag 2023) ()
6. Airbags are made up of thick wooden material.	()
7. The cricket bat transfers its light energy to the ball.	()
Complete the following sentences :	2. When the rec
1. When a bat hits a ball strongly, the energy of the bat the ball and the speed of the ball increases.	is transferred to
Among safety equipment which are used during collision of c     and	arsars
3. As a result of collision between the ball and the bat, the direct will	tion of the ball
4. During a car crash, the is inflated with a gas to provide	de a soft cushion.
5. Airbags absorb the of the passengers during collision	
6. When objects collide with each other, is transferred by	
7. In cars, the prevents passenger from moving forward	
suddenly stops.	(Giza 2023)
Give reasons for:	
Seatbelts in cars are very important.	at 667/4651
2. Airbags in cars are very important.	og to efficial to
3. The speed of the ball increases when the bat hits it hard.	
What happens if ?	
The moving cricket bat hits a ball (according to the	transfer of energy).
2. Airbags in a car don't inflate during a crash.	1764 - 1581 &

9	Look at the opposite photo that shows a tennis
i	player, then choose the correct answer:

1. ..... energies are produced from the collision between the racket and the ball.



- b. Kinetic and light
- c. Electrical and sound
- d. Kinetic and sound

2.	When	the	racket	hits	the ball	, the	 of th	ne	ball	is	chan	ged.
			bi tori								6 2	

- a. size
- b. mass
- c. direction
- d. color

3. During hiting the ball with the racket,	, all the following sentences are correct	,
except		

- a. the ball changes its direction.
- b. kinetic energy transfers from the racket to the ball.
- c. the speed of the ball changes.
- d. the size of the ball decreases.

1	O Look at the opposite photo that shows a crash betwe	en a train and a car, then
	answer the questions below:	

1.	In your opinion, which one of them is damaged more	е
	than the other? (Give a reason for your answer).	
	MENIOCO VIII	



2.	. What happens to the car airbags during the crash?
	<ul> <li>8 St. Black Seed, of the Leaf prospesses with an applicable of the control of the c</li></ul>

#### **LESSON TWO**

#### Activity 4

#### **Basics of Speed**

- ▶ Look at this picture, then put (✓) or (X):
  - 1. The speed of the motorcycle affect the amount of damage that will happen to the ice cream cart.
  - The kinetic energy of the motorcycle transfers to the ice cream cart during collision.



In this activity we will study the meaning of speed and how we calculate it.

#### Basics of speed:

Speed is a measurement of how fast something is moving.

#### Speed:

It is the distance that an object travels in a certain amount of time.

#### Calculating the speed:

 To calculate the speed of any moving object, we can divide the distance that the object moves by the time taken to travel that distance as follows:

So, we can define speed also as, distance per unit time.

The measuring unit of speed may be:

Kilometer Per Hour (km/hr)

Meter Per Second (m/sec)



The speed of an object is not affected by the direction of this moving object.

#### Example:

If a car moves forward 5 meters in one second, then it moves backward 5 meters in one second, so its speed is still 5 meters per second.

#### Problems:

1. Amir runs 100 meters in 20 seconds. Calculate the speed of Amir.

$$Speed = \frac{Distance}{Time}$$

Speed = 
$$\frac{100}{20}$$
 = 5 m/sec.

Distance = 100 m Time = 20 sec.

affected measurement

يتأثر قياس

distance per unit time

motorcycle المسافة لوحدة الزمن

دراجة نارية

245

2. If a bus traveled 600 kilometers in 5 hours. Calculate the speed of the bus.

Speed = 
$$\frac{\text{Distance}}{\text{Time}}$$

Speed = 
$$\frac{600}{5}$$
 = 120 km/hr.

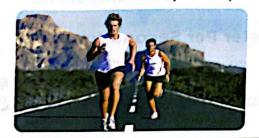
Distance = 600 km. Time = 5 hours

## Comparing the speed of two moving objects:

- To compare the speed of two moving objects, we can use one of the following two ways:
  - 1. Measure the distance that both objects travel in the same amount of time.
- The object that travels a greater distance in the same amount of time is moving at a greater speed.
- Example :

If two runners run for 1 hour, where:

- The first runner travels 6 kilometers.
- The second runner travels 9 kilometers. So, the second runner is moving at a greater speed, because he travels a greater distance (9 km) in the same amount of time (1 hour).



- 2. Measure the time that both objects take to travel the same distance.
- The object that travels the same distance in a smaller amount of time is moving at a greater speed.
- Example :

If two cars are racing 120 kilometers, where:

- The first car reach the end line of race in 1 hour.
- The second car reach the end line of race in 2 hours.

So, the first car is moving at a greater speed, because it travels the same distance (120 kilometers) in a shorter time (1 hour).





#### Check your understanding

Complete the following sentences using the words below:

(speed - faster - slower)

- 1. A car that travels 90 kilometers per hour is ...... than a car that travels 60 kilometers per hour.
- 2. Two bicycles are racing for 500 meters, the bicycle that finishes the race in a greater time is ...... than the bicycle that finishes in a shorter time.
- 3. The distance per unit time is known as .....

## Activity 5

#### **Racing Downhill**

- You have learned about speed and energy, in this activity you will measure the speed and the kinetic energy of an object moving down a cardboard tube at various incline angles.
- Now, let's study the relation between speed and kinetic energy.

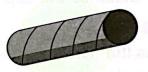




Toy truck



Metric ruler



Cardboard paper towel tube



Paper cup



Stopwatch



Scissors



Books



#### Part (1): The relation between the speed and the angle of inclination.

- 1. Put one end of the tube on the top of two books. and the other end of the tube resting on the ground.
- 2. Record in a table the number of books used to set up the tube in the column "Number of books".
- 3. Roll the truck down the tube. Use the stopwatch to determine the time and record in the table how long the truck takes to travel to the end of the tube in the column "Time to travel".



4. Add one book to change the incline angle and repeat the steps, then add another book and repeat the steps again.



As the "Time of travel" is less, the speed of the toy truck is higher.

cardboard tube incline angle towel

أنبوبة من الورق المقوى resting زاوية الانحدار

angle of inclination determine منشفة / فوطة

column زاوية الميل مستقرة تحديد

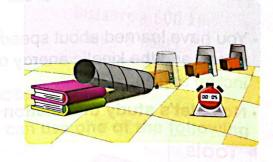
metric ruler

مسطرة مترية

247

#### Part (2): The relation between the kinetic energy and the angle of inclination.

- 5. Now, repeat the activity as in part (1), but place the paper cup at the bottom of the tube as shown in the figure.
- 6. Measure the distance the cup moves each time after the truck rolls into it, and record in the table the distance that the cup travels in the column "Distance the cup traveled"





#### Note

As the "Distance the cup traveled" is longer, the kinetic energy of the toy truck is greater.

distance dul levierno amor	Part (1)	Part (2)	
Number of books	Time to travel	Distance the cup traveled	
2 books	5 seconds	3 cm	
3 books	3 seconds	4 cm	
4 books	2 seconds	7 cm	

#### **Observations**

- As the angle of inclination increases, the speed of the truck increases as it takes less time to reach the end of the tube.
- As the angle of inclination increases the distance that the paper cup traveled increases.

#### Conclusions

- As the speed of a moving object increases, its kinetic energy increases.
- Both speed and kinetic energy increase, as the angle of inclination increases.



#### Check your understanding

Complete the following sentences using the words below:

#### (increases - faster - kinetic)

- 1. If the incline of a ramp increases, the object rolling down it will be ...
- 2. When the speed of an object increases, its kinetic energy ......
- 3. We can use the speed of an object to know the ...... energy of this object.

In the Assessment Book: Try to answer: Self-Assessment 23

248

bottom

paper cup الأسفل

کوب ورقی

## **Exercises on Lesson 2**

Understar	nd OA	pply	<ul><li>Higher Thinking Skills</li></ul>
Choose the correc	t answer :	ta gmiss entite	toth cars reach the end
1. The measuring i	units of distance	are	
a. second and m	neter.	b. hour and	d kilometer.
c. hour and seco	ond.	d. kilomete	er and meter.
object.		tors that we no	eed to calculate the speed of an
a. time - kinetic e	THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF THE		
b. distance - kine			
c. distance - time			
d. kinetic energy			2. The speed is distance per u
			Cluxor 2023 / Alexandria 2022)
<ul><li>a. Speed = distar</li><li>c. Speed = distar</li></ul>			distance x time distance – time
4. Which of the follo	wing is a meas	uring unit of sp	
a. hr/km.	b. sec/m.	c. kg/sec.	d. m/sec.
			(Menofia 2023 / Cairo 2022)
5. What is the spee a. 100 m/sec.		c. 30 m/sec	ters in 4 second ? c. d. 40 m/sec.
6 When the kinetic	energy of a mo	ving body	, its speed (Sharkia 2023)
a. increases – do			es – increases.
c. decreases - do	esn't change.	d. decrease	es – increases.
		s, the speed o	of a toy car rolling on it
and its kinetic end		l. b. ikakaana	West of the colour and the state of
a. increases – de			
c. decreases – de			
8. An object keeps n		ne speed whe	n
a. its kinetic energ	200		
b. its potential end			
c. no another forc	The state of the s		
d. another object	collides with it.		
9. If the angle of incl	ination of a hill i	increases, the	kinetic energy of an object
moving down it wi			
a. decrease.	o. increase.	c. remain a	s it is. d. be destroyed.

	<ul> <li>10. The following figures show a ramp and a flat surface of 2 meters length for each. If two toy cars of equal mass are pushed with equal force at the same moment, so</li></ul>
2	Put (✓) or (X):
T	1. The speed is a measurement of how fast something is moving.
0	2. The speed is distance per unit time.
	3. We can measure the covered distance in kilometer unit. (Minia 2023) ( )
•	4. When Rana runs 50 meter in 10 seconds, her speed is 500 m/sec. ( )
	5. If car (A) covered a distance of 100 kilometers in one hour and car (B) covered a distance of 100 kilometers in two hours so, car (B) is faster than car (A).
	6. The angle of inclination of a ramp affects the speed of an object moving on it.
•	7. If two objects cover the same distance in the same time so, they have similar
15	speed. Speed. Speed beautiful who private to various plants of many (2 )
	8. When an object moves down on a ramp, its speed increases by decreasing the angle of inclination of the ramp.
	9. When two similar objects move with the same speed, they have different kinetic energies.
3	Write the scientific term of each of the following:
٦	1. The distance that an object travels in a certain amount of time. (
	2. The measuring unit of the speed.
4	Correct the underlined words:
	1. When the speed of an object increases, its kinetic energy decreases. ()
	When the angle of inclination of a ramp increases, the speed and kinetic energy of an object moves down on it decreases.  ()
	3. When an object moves at a very high speed, it has a small amount of kinetic
	energy. (

Complete the fall.	
Complete the following sentences:	
1. When the speed of a car increases, its energ	
<ol> <li>A car with speed = 60 km/hr, its kinetic energy is</li> <li>car with speed = 40 km/hr, if they have the same mas</li> </ol>	
3. A train that travels 150 kilometers per hour is	
travels 100 kilometers per hour.	
4. The speed depends on the distance that is measured	in kilometers or
and the time that is measured in or or	
5. A car covers 80 meters in 4 seconds, so it moves at a s	
6. If the kinetic energy of a moving body decreases, its	
7. If the angle of inclination decreases, the speed of an	object moves down on it
grees that show a toy truck moves	i plante enite manifel
Give reasons for:	down two different ran
The speed of a truck is more than that of a small car who	en both of them roll down
on the same ramp.	
	variance and the second second second
What happens if ?	anding to its kinetic energy)
1. The speed of a car increases. (Giza 2023) (acc	ording to its kinetic energy)
ter in the second of the secon	increasing the angle
the section of a ramp on which	ch a toy car moves.
2. We increase the angle of inclination of a ramp on which	to the speed of the toy car).
the amount of charge transfers belonging the little (according to	to the open and the contract of the contract o
J (2004)	
Look at the opposite photos then answer the question	ns below :
1. Which one of the two animals has greater	0
kinetic energy (rabbit or tortoise) ?	
(Give a reason for your answer).	
	and the second second
	Speed = 40 km/hr.
2. If the speed of the rabbit decreases, so its kinetic	
If the speed of the rabbit decreases, so its kinetic energy will (Complete).	
	Speed = 1 km/hr.

Find the speed of a runner, if you know that he covers 4	00 meters in 80
seconds. Zazzeroni vojtenia i za zeseptoni nao a i	(Giza 2022)
60 lun/hr, its kinetic energy is than that of another	
2 km/hr, if litey have the same mass.  150 kilometers per hour is	cer with \$9eed = 4
A train travels from Cairo to Alexandria in a distance of 20	00 kilometers in 2 hours.
Find its speed.	(Cairo 2023 / Minia 2022)
ters in 4 seconds, so it moves at a speed entials entitle im/sec.	🗆 5. A car dovers 80 me
I of a moving body decreases, its speed will reference true in	6. If the kinetic energ
nation decreases. the speed of an object mayes down on it	
Look at the opposite figures that show a toy truck moves	
down two different ramps, then answer the questions	
below: went to diod godward lines a lo test and more at	
1. Which ramp makes the truck has more speed ?	
(Give a reason for your answer).	Ramp (A)
Lavereg a usuace of too sacrates in the roles so, car	
2. What happens to the speed of the truck when	Ramp (B)
increasing the angle of inclination of ramp (B)?	ramp D
more acting to a manufacture of the property o	en permeta de la composición del composición de la composición de la composición de la composición de la composición del composición de la composición del composición de la composición del composición de la composición del composición del composición del composición del composición

## **LESSON THREE**

## Activity 6

## **Energy and Collisions**

- ▶ Look at this picture, then put (√) or (x):
- 1. Before collision the moving car has a potential energy as it is running on the street.
- 2. During collision between two objects, there is no change of energy occur.



- In this activity we will learn the effect of collision on energy transfer.

## **Energy and collisions:**

- When you and your friend crash with each other, we can say a collision happens between both of you.

#### Collision:

It is the bumping or crashing of two objects into each other.

## When two objects collide with each other:

- An amount of energy transfers between them.
- Changes of energy occur.

## Example of collision between two objects:

What happens if you are running down the street without looking in front of you and hit a traffic sign post?

- In this situation :
  - You will stop moving forward.
  - You may bounce off and get hurt.
  - The traffic sign post may vibrate.



- ▶ In the previous example, what are the changes and transfer of energy that take place ?
  - The kinetic energy transfers from your body to the traffic sign post. This leads to the vibration of the traffic sign post.
  - A part of your kinetic energy changes into a sound energy (the sound you hear on collision).



## Check your understanding

► Look at the following picture, then complete the sentences using these words:

(kinetic - collides - cart)

- **1.** The bicycle has energy as it is running on the street.
- 2. When the cyclist with the bread cart, the kinetic energy of the bicycle transfers to the and the bread, that causes the cart tips over and the bread scatters.



The traffic sign post may vibrate

## **Activity** 7 The Effect of Speed on Collisions

From the previous activities, you have learned that as the incline of the ramp increases, the speed of the object increases.

The amount of kinetic energy of a moving object depends on

The mass of object.

The speed of object.

- Now, we are going to study the effect of speed on collisions.
- When a fast object crash into another object, the faster object transfers some of its energy to the other object, where:
  - By increasing the speed of the object, the energy that transfers during collision will increase.
  - Some of this transferred energy may be in the form of heat, light or sound.



Comparison between a fast-moving object and a slow-moving object:

Fast-moving object	Slow-moving object
It has more energy.	It has less energy.
<ul> <li>When this object hits another object, it exerts more force.</li> </ul>	When this object hits another object, it exerts less force.
This force causes a big damage to the object that cannot be repaired.	This force causes less damage to this object than the fast-moving object.

## **Note**

Driving fast is very dangerous, because if a car increases its speed, its kinetic energy increases that results in exerting a large force during an accident.

## What happens if ...?

1. Two cars move at different speeds in opposite directions collide with each other?

The forces exerted in the accident depend on the speed of both cars, so damage would be more stronger because they move in opposite direction.



2. Two cars move at different speeds in the same direction collide with each other?

The forces exerted in the accident depend on the speed of both cars, this leads to damage that would be less stronger because they move in the same directions.



Cons	-
٢	一区
١	一門
١	-U

## Check your understanding

	Com	plete	the	following	g sentences
--	-----	-------	-----	-----------	-------------

The amount of kinetic energy of an object depends on both \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_ of this object.

2. Fast-moving objects have \_\_\_\_\_ kinetic energy, while slow-moving objects have \_\_\_\_ kinetic energy.

3. By increasing the speed of an object, its kinetic energy

In the Assessment Book:
Try to answer:
Self-Assessment 24

## **Exercises on Lesson 3**

<ul><li>Understand</li></ul>	O Apply	<ul><li>Higher Thinking Skills</li></ul>
Choose the correct answer	fand and asuals	nsayyano materio en la come. Nsayawana karan e e e e
1. When the speed of a moving its collision will	ving object incre	ases, the energy that transfers during
a. increase.	b. dec	rease.
c. not change.	d. equ	al zero.
2. A fast-moving object has	that of a sl	ow-moving object.
a. the same energy as	b. mo	re energy than
c. less energy than	d. no	energy as
3. The two factors affecting	the kinetic energ	y of an object are
<ul> <li>a. its speed and the color.</li> </ul>	b. its r	mass and the color.
c. its speed and the mass	d. its I	ight and the sound energies.
4. As the mass of a vehicle i	ncreases, it nee	ds to
a. less force - less potent	ial energy.	
<ul><li>b. more force – more pote</li></ul>	ential energy.	
<ul><li>c. less force – less kinetic</li></ul>		
<ul><li>d. more force – more kine</li></ul>		
each other, the resulted d	amage	e with the same speed collide with
a. is larger in one of them		ne other.
b. is equal in both of the to	wo objects.	3. When you drive on high speed, t
c. doesn't depend on the	nass of the two	objects.
d. doesn't depend on the		objects.
6. On collision, energy is		troved. Deligio chies deligionale
a. created.	spod aldizzoo z	Dyeu.
c. created and transferred	. d. tran	sferred and change.
7. When car and truck collide	with each othe	r in opposite directions,
a. the car has more energy	y and cause mo	re damage.
b. the truck has more ener	gy and cause m	ore damage.
c. the car has less energy	and cause more	damage.
d. the truck has less energ	y and cause les	s damage.
8. All the following factors affe	ect the kinetic e	nergy of a moving car, except
a. the mass of the car.		ilizana adi ni zavem tarit belde
b. the pushing force of the	car engine.	
c. the airbags inside the ca	ir.	
d the instinction of the rea	d on which the	or movoc

- 9. The mass of an object ......
  - a. doesn't affect its potential energy or its kinetic energy.
  - b. affects its potential energy and its kinetic energy.
  - c. affects its potential energy only.
  - d. affects its kinetic energy only.

## Choose from column (B) what suits it in column (A):

they produce very small amount of damage.

directions and (A) to travour-tour	o jest (B) the state of
<ol> <li>A heavy object that doesn't move</li> <li>A light object that doesn't move</li> <li>A fast object with a heavy mass</li> <li>A slow object with a light mass</li> </ol>	<ul> <li>a. has much kinetic energy.</li> <li>b. has much light energy.</li> <li>c. if it moves with a fast speed, it has much kinetic energy.</li> <li>d. has low kinetic energy.</li> <li>e. if it moves with a low speed, it has low kinetic energy.</li> </ul>

	3	Put	(V)	or	(X)	:
--	---	-----	-----	----	-----	---

	1. Fast-moving objects can be exposed to less damage than slow ones.	(	)
	2. A slow and light object has much kinetic energy.	(	)
	3. When you drive on high speed, the kinetic energy decreases.	(	)
	4. When two bikes collide with each other, an amount of energy transfers bet	wee	n
	them.	(	)
,	5. You have to drive a car as fast as possible, because at high speeds you		
	can avoid collisions.	(	)
•	6. When you collide with an object a part of your kinetic energy may changes	into	0
	sound energy.	(	)
	7. A slow-moving object has more energy and force than that of a fast-moving	g	
	object.	(	)
•	8. To increase the speed of a moving object, you can collide it with another		
	object that moves in the opposite direction.	(	)
)	9. When two heavy and fast cars move in opposite directions collide together	r,	

Mrite the scientific term of each of the following:	
The process in which two objects bump or crash into each other, and including an energy transfer.	()
2. The energy that can be heard and usually produced when two objects collide with each other.	()
Correct the underlined words :	
1. By increasing the speed of the object, the energy that transfers du collision will decrease.	()
<ol> <li>When two cars collide with each other, the <u>potential</u> energy transfe the faster car to the slower car.</li> </ol>	()
<ol> <li>A fast-moving object has more energy and force that cause <u>less</u> d during its collision.</li> </ol>	amage ()
4. The effect of collision increases, when the speed of the body decre	eases. ()
<ol> <li>Two objects of the same mass and placed at the same height, have the same <u>kinetic</u> energy.</li> </ol>	()
Complete the following sentences :	
The amount of kinetic energy of a moving object depends on its  its	and
2. During collision of two moving bikes, transfers between th	em.
3. When two cars collide with each other, some of energy may change theat	je into
4. The humping or crashing of two objects into each other is called	
5. When a moving car hits a tree, a part of energy of the car a energy which you hear it.	changes into
Give reasons for :	
1. When two objects collide with each other, you can hear a sound.	
0 D : : - (1:	
2. Driving fast is very dangerous.	
What happens if ?	
Two bicycles move in an opposite direction, collide with each other.	

## Look at the opposite photo, then choose the correct answer:

- The car has ..... energy that allows it to move on the road.
  - a. light

b. sound

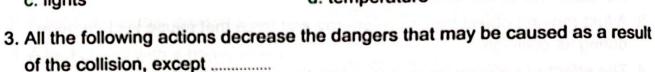
c. kinetic

- d. thermal
- If the driver changes the ...... of the car, its kinetic energy will change.
  - a. color

b. speed

c. lights

d. temperature



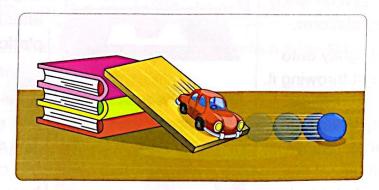
- a. increasing the speed of the car. b. using the seatbelt.
- c. adding more airbags to the car. d. decreasing kinetic energy of the car.

## **LESSON FOUR**

## Activity 8

## **Speed and Collisions**

Look at this picture which represents a toy car collides with a small ball, then choose the correct answer:



- 1. By increasing the speed of the car, the kinetic energy of this car (decreases – increases – doesn't change)
- 2. The ball moves a distance due to ...... of the car.

(force - speed - force and speed)

- You have learned from the previous lessons that:
  - By increasing the force of an object



The kinetic energy of this object increases.

By increasing the speed of an object



The kinetic energy of this object increases.

· Now, we are going to carry out an activity to show the effect of force and speed of a moving object on its kinetic energy during collision.





Ball of modeling clay



Piece of cardboard



Hard surface (wooden table)

Steps	Figure	Observations
<ol> <li>Use the cardboard to make a landing platform on a hard surface like a wooden table.</li> <li>Hold the clay ball at a distance 1 meter above the platform.</li> <li>Drop the clay ball lightly onto the platform without throwing it.</li> </ol>		The shape of the clay ball changes a little and becomes irregular after hitting the platform.
4. Smoothen the clay ball over and lift it up to 1 meter above the platform, then repeat the experiment again, but this time throw the clay ball with a gentle force to increase its speed.		The shape of the clay ball change more and becomes more irregular after hitting the platform.
5. Repeat the experiment one more time and throw the clay ball with a hard force, so its speed increases much more.		The shape of the ball changes much more and becomes completely irregular after hitting the platform.

## Conclusions

- As the force on an object increases, its speed and the amount of its kinetic energy increase.
- As the kinetic energy of a moving object increases, more damage will happen to this object during collision.

# Check your understanding

#### ▶ Put (√) or (x):

By increasing the force on an object, its speed and kinetic energy increases. (

landing platform irregular hard surface قاعدة اختبار smoothing غير منتظم gently سطح صلب throw تنعیم

برفق پرمی

#### **The Effect of Mass on Collisions** Activity 9

- You have learned from the previous lessons the effect of speed on collisions.
- Now, we are going to study the effect of mass on collisions.

#### The relation between the mass of objects and their kinetic energy:

- Different vehicles have different masses, where a large truck has a much greater mass than a car.
- If a large truck is traveling at the same speed of a car, the truck has more kinetic energy than the car, so the truck needs a bigger engine than the car.
- · As the vehicle moves faster, the amount of fuel that burns inside its engine increases to provide it with more kinetic energy.
- As the mass of an object increases, its kinetic energy increases.
- From the previous explanation, we can conclude that if the truck and the car move at the same speed, we will find that:



#### The truck:

- Has a big mass.
- Has a big engine.
- Uses more fuel.
- Has more kinetic energy.



#### The car:

- Has a small mass.
- Has a small engine.
- Uses less fuel.
- Has less kinetic energy.

## Give a reason for ...

The truck whose mass is 1 ton has half the kinetic energy of another truck that has mass 2 tons when they both move at the same speed.

Because if the mass of an object increases, its kinetic energy at the same speed also increases.

vehicles truck

fuel سیارات

engine شاحنة

وقود

ton

#### The effect of mass on collisions:

 A large-mass vehicle causes more damage when it hits something than a small-mass vehicle traveling at the same speed.

## What happens if ...?

1. A bicycle moving at a speed of 50 km/hr hits a person.

The bicycle will cause some injuries to this person, but he will survive.



A car moving at a speed of 50 km/hr hits a person.The life of this person may be endangered.





## Check your understanding

- ▶ Put (✓) or (x):
  - 1. A big truck has a big mass, while small car has a big engine.
- ( )
- 2. If the mass of an object increases, its kinetic energy increases.
- ( )

## Activity 10 Energy Conversions During a Collision

- ▶ You have learned that when two objects collide with each other, transfer and changes of energy take place such as :
  - When you play a game with marbles, kinetic energy is transferred from your hand to the first marble, then there is another transfer of energy from your marble to the ones you hit.



 Some of the kinetic energy is changed into sound energy when you hear the click sound during collisions between marbles.

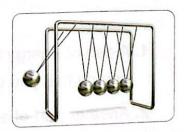
## Energy conversions during a collision of Newton's cradle:

When Newton's cradle ball is raised up without leaving it go, it stores potential energy and doesn't have any kinetic energy.



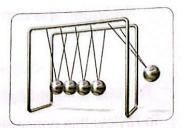
2

When you leave the ball to move in the direction of the rest balls, the potential energy decreases gradually and changes into kinetic energy.



-(3)

Most of kinetic energy in the Newton's cradle is transferred from the first ball to the rest of balls, so the number of balls moving on both sides is equal.



In the previous example, some of kinetic energy of the first ball is changed during collision into:

1. Sound energy	2. Thermal energy	3. Other forms of energy
Some of this kinetic energy changes into sound energy that is produced during the collision between balls.	Some of this kinetic energy changes into thermal energy that is produced due to the friction between the string and the other parts of Newton's cradle and also during collision between balls.	Some of this kinetic energy changes into other forms of energy due to the friction of air with the ball during its movement.

## **₩** Notes

- 1. If you leave the moving balls of Newton's cradle long enough, their kinetic energy decreases gradually until they stop after lots of collisions.
- 2. Energy is conserved during collision, so it cannot be destroyed, and the amount of energy before the collision is equal to the amount of energy after the collision.

## Check your understanding

Look at the following picture that shows a car collides with a traffic sign post, then complete the following sentences using these words:

## (thermal - sound)

- 1. A part of energy is changed into ..... energy that you can hear.
- 2. Another part of energy is changed into ..... energy due to friction between the car and the traffic sign post.



## **Review on Concept (2.3)**

To review this concept look at the Assessment Book "Part 2: Final Revision".

In the Assessment Book:

Try to answer:

- Self-Assessment (25)
- Model Exam on Theme (2)

conserve خيط

يحفظ

## **Exercises on Lesson 4**

	Understand	O Apply	Higher Thinking Skills
1 Cho	ose the correct answer	s infraftig of the	
1. A	very big truck needs	to move.	
	very small engine	b. small	engine
C.	very big engine	d. no en	gine
2. A	s the force that acts on a	an object increase	s, its ability to do work
a.	increases.	b. decre	ases.
c.	doesn't changed.	d. destro	oyed.anollogila ellectrate o that
3. Th	ne amount of fuel that is	used in a big truc	k to produce a certain amount of
kii	netic energy is the	amount of fuel in	a small car to get the same amount
of	kinetic energy.		
a.	less than	b. equal	to
C.	more than	d. half to	Figure Schip Spece, a large ma
4. Oı	n a flat road, if a large tr	uck is traveling at	the same speed of a small car, then
	e truck has		
a.	more kinetic energy.		a dayo digele energy
b.	less kinetic energy.		
C.	the same kinetic energy	of the car.	
	no kinetic energy at all.		
5. W	hen a car stops, all the fe	ollowing become z	
a.	speed. b. kinetic	energy. c. mass.	d. work.
6. WI	nen a moving car decrea	ses its speed the	n stops, so
a.	its kinetic energy becom	es zero.	Haburas St. Ablana a rest g. 7
b.	its light energy only beco	omes zero.	
	ts light energy and thern		
	its kinetic energy becom-		
7. If t	wo objects collide with e	ach other, the ene	rgy after collision is the
en	ergy before collision.	none of	<del>- J. Antargyach</del> regelerate in 1997
	triple b. double	c. half	d. equal to
8. Wh	nen two balls are pushed	away at the left s	ide of Newton's cradle, this
hap	opens as a result of collis	sion of from	the right side.
	one ball	b. two bal	
c. t	hree balls	d. four ba	Is no no mas inni porci sei i ili

- 9. In Newton's cradle, when you move a ball away from the others and not let it go, so ...... that is stored in this ball. a. your potential energy is changed into kinetic energy b. your kinetic energy is changed into potential energy c. your sound energy is changed into kinetic energy d. your sound energy is changed into potential energy 10. The kinetic energy in Newton's cradle through the balls travels in ........ at each collision. a, three different directions b. the same direction of movement c. two opposite directions d. the form of chemical energy 11. When you throw a ball of clay strongly at a wall, there is ......... b. more damage occurs to the ball. a. no damage occurs to the ball. d. energy is created. c. energy is destroyed. 12. At the same speed, a large mass object has ...... than that of a small mass object. a. less potential energy b. more potential energy c. less kinetic energy d. more kinetic energy 2 Choose from column (B) what suits it in column (A): (B) (A) 1. Large-mass vehicle a. It has a big amount of kinetic energy. with speed 100 km/hr 2. Small-mass vehicle b. It has no kinetic energy. with speed 20 km/hr 3. Small-mass vehicle c. It has the most thermal energy. that doesn't move d. It has a small amount of kinetic energy. 2. ..... 3. 1. ......
- 3 Put (🗸) or (x) :
  - 1. A small object moving at a low speed has a big amount of kinetic energy.
  - 2. The force that acts on an object doesn't affect its speed.

	<ol><li>The smaller the mass of the vehicle, the less fuel it consumes.</li></ol>	(	)
-	4. Objects of equal masses and move at different speeds have the same		
	kinetic energy.	(	)
	5. Speed and mass are the factors that affect the kinetic energy of a moving		
Ī	object.	(	)
	6. The moving balls in Newton's cradle will stop after lots of collisions becau	se	
Ĭ	their kinetic energy is destroyed.	(	)
	7. Some kinetic energy is changed during collisions of balls in Newton's crac	dle,	
Ĭ	into sound and thermal energies.	(	)
	8. Among the forms of energy that don't exist in Newton's cradle during collis	sions	s
Ĭ	are light and chemical energies.	(	)
	are light and enemies energies.		
4	Correct the underlined word :		
•	1. A two-tons truck has smaller amount of kinetic energy than that of		
	one-ton truck moving at the same speed.		)
	2. All moving objects always have light energy.		)
	3. The larger the mass of a car, the less fuel it consumes. (		)
	4. The distance that the balls move on the two opposite sides on Newton's c	radle	е
	increases gradually as time passes.	)	)
	5. In Newton's cradle, the kinetic energy of moving balls increases as time p	asse	es.
	S. III Newton's cradic, the kinetic charge of the mag and an arrange (		)
	6. The number of moving balls at one side on Newton's cradle must be more	tha	n
	those moving at the other side.		)
	those moving at the other side.		
5	Complete the following sentences:		
•	1. By increasing the force that acts on a moving object, its increases	s tha	ıt
	causes the increase of its energy.		
O	2. A car moving with speed 50 km/hr has kinetic energy than that of		
1	a truck moving with the same speed.		
•	3. In vehicles, the energy that is stored in the fuel changes into		
	energy that allows them to move.		
-	4. Most of energy in the Newton's cradle is transferred from the first	ball	to
	the rest of balls.		
	5. When a marble hits another one, some of energy changes into	8	
1	energy which you can hear.		
-	6. During collision between Newton's cradle balls, some of energy		
	changes into energy due to the between the string and the	е	
	other parts of the cradle.		
	7. Due to of air with Newton's cradle balls, some of energy		
	changes into other forms of energy.		

-	8. In Newton's cradle, when you rise up one ball, it stores energy that changes into energy when you leave the ball to move.
	9. The energy decreases gradually when you leave the moving balls of Newton's cradle long enough until they
6	Give reasons for :
	<ol> <li>A truck needs a bigger engine than that of a small car to move with the same speed.</li> </ol>
	spointing material above attraction of sever that their venous 10 sound at 50000 A.S. s.
-	A car consumes less fuel than that consumed in a bus to move at the same speed.
•	You can hear a sound during collision between marbles.
	4. The amount of energy before collision is equal to the amount of energy after collision.
5	What happens if ?
	The pushing force that acts on an object decreases. (according to its kinetic energy).
	2. The kinetic energy of a moving car increases.
	(according to the damage during collision).
	3. A truck and a small car move at the same speed. (according to kinetic energy).
	4. The Newton's cradle ball is raised up without leaving it go.
C.	(according to its energy).
	5. You let the ball of Newton's cradle move towards the rest of balls. (according to the change of energy).
	6. Friction occurs between the string and the other parts of Newton's cradle during collision.  (according to the change of energy).

3	Arrange the following sentences to show the steps of collision of Newton's
	cradle balls in the correct order.
	() Kinetic energy is transferred from the first ball to the rest of balls.
	() Potential energy of the first ball decreases and changes into kinetic energy
	() Kinetic energy of all balls decreases gradually until they stop.
	() Raise up the first ball, so it stores potential energy.

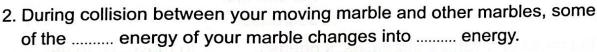
## Look at the opposite figure, then choose the correct answer:

- 1. When you push the marble, the ...... energy of your hand transfers to the marble.
  - a. sound

b. thermal

c. kinetic

d. potential

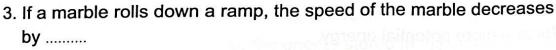


a. sound - kinetic

b. kinetic - sound

c. thermal - kinetic

d. sound - potential



- a. decreasing the angle of the ramp.
- b. increasing the angle of the ramp.
- c. increasing the mass of the marble.
- d. decreasing the width of the ramp.

## Model Exam 1



## on Concept (2.3)

Total mark 15

(A) Choose the correct answer:	) Folential energy is transitived from the 5) Folential energy of the first balt dec	marks)
When a car stops suddenly, the particle.	assengers move	
a. backward.	b. downward.	
c. upward.	d. forward.	
	tic energy of an object are of	
<ul><li>a. light and sound energies</li><li>c. mass and speed</li></ul>	b. mass and color d. speed and color	
If an object moves down along a respect of the object will	amp, as the angle of the ramp increases	the
<ul><li>a. increase.</li><li>c. become zero.</li></ul>	b. not change. d. decrease.	
<ul> <li>4. As the mass of a vehicle increases</li> <li>a. less force – less kinetic energy.</li> <li>b. less force – less potential energical</li> <li>c. more force – more kinetic energical</li> <li>d. more force – more potential energical</li> </ul>	If a marble rolls down a ramp, the spety	ε
(B) Give a reason for the following:  The speed of the ball increases w		
2 (A) Put (🗸) or (X) :	e provide speciality (2)	marks)
1. Some of kinetic energy of balls in I	Newton's cradle is changed during collisi	ons
into sound and thermal energies.		( )
2. Speed = Time + Distance.	(Santakasi et ka et	( )
3. After car collision, the air bags defl	ate as fast as they inflate.	( )
4. In Newton's cradle as the amount of distance of the balls increases.	of the kinetic energy increases, the movi	ng ( )
(B) What happens if ?  Two bicycles move in opposite dir	ections collide with each other.	

(A) Correct the underli	ned words:	(5 mai
. All moving objects al	ways have <u>light</u> energy.	<b>(</b>
<ol><li>Kinetic energy of an open potential energy.</li></ol>	object doesn't depend on its <u>speed</u> w	hich affects its
3. The number of moving those moving at the o	g balls of Newton's cradle on one sidether side.	de must be more tha
decreases.	increases, the damage that occurs d  (B) what suits it in column (A):	(
(A)	(B)	webillos ataeldo.
Kinetic energy     Potential energy     Light energy	<ul><li>a. form of energy that reaches the hearing.</li><li>b. type of energy transferred from</li></ul>	e ear causing
	another rest one in Newton's of	
		cradle.

**2.** ......

1. .....

3. .....

## Model Exam 2



## on Concept (2.3)

(A) Write the scientific term of each of the following:	(5 mark	(s)
1. A heavy steel ball that swings on a cable and used in destruction of parts	of	
buildings.		)
2. The process in which two objects bump or crash into each other including	g an	
energy transfer.		)
3. They are present in car airbags and allow them to deflate		
fast after collision. (	••••••	)
4. The energy that can be heard and usually produced when two		
objects collide with each other.		)
(P) Chaosa the correct answer:		
(B) Choose the correct answer:		
1. When the Newton's cradle ball is raised up without		
leaving it go, its energy is maximum and its		
a. kinetic – potential b. potential – kinetic		
	4	j
c. kinetic – sound d. kinetic – thermal		
2. When you leave the ball moves in the direction of		
the rest of balls some of kinetic energy of this ball		
changes into and energies.		
a. sound – electrical b. thermal – kinetic		
c. kinetic – sound d. sound – thermal		
2 (A) Put (V) or (X):	(5 mar	·ks)
1. A smaller and slower object has more kinetic energy than that of a larger	and	
faster object.	(	)
2. In Newton's cradle as the height of the raised ball increases, it stores mo	re	
potential energy.	(	)
3. When an object decreases its speed gradually, so its kinetic energy decr	ease	S
gradually.	(	)
4. Seatbelt is one of the safety equipment in cars.	(	)

	(B) Arrange the following sentences to show the steps of collision of Newton's cradle balls in the correct order:
	() Potential energy of the first ball decreases and changes into kinetic energy.
	() Kinetic energy is transferred from the first ball to the rest of balls.
	() Rise up the first ball, so it stores potential energy.
	() Kinetic energy of all balls decreases gradually until they stop.
3	(A) Complete the following sentences:
	When a moving car hits a tree, a part of energy of the car changes into a energy which you hear it.
	2. A car covers 80 meters in 4 seconds, so it moves at a speed equals m/sec.
	<ol><li>If the mass of a moving object decreases, its kinetic energy will at the same speed.</li></ol>
	4. During a car crash, the is inflated with a gas to provide a soft cushion.
	(B) Give a reason for the following:  If two vehicles moves at the same speed, the vehicle with a large mass causes more damage than the vehicle with a small mass during collision.

# For the Next term

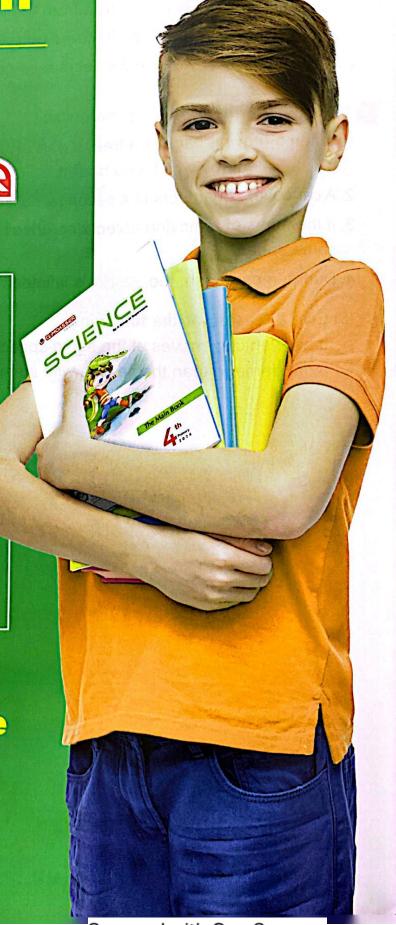
Ask for



in

- **SCIENCE**
- **MATHEMATICS**
- DISCOVER
- **CONNECT**
- **CONNECT PLUS**

For **Primary stage** 



Scanned with CamScanner

#### AT ALL BOOKSTORES



**IN: Mathematics** & Connect Plus

- Use your code on the back cover of the book.
- For more information, look at page 4.



#### يصرف مجانًا مع هذا الكتاب

- الجـــزء الخــاص بالتدريبــات
- الجــزء الخـاص بالإجــابات
- الجـــزء الخـــاص بالترجــمة









#### AL TALABA BOOKSTORE

For printing, publication & distribution

El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt

Tel.: 02/259 340 12 - 259 377 91 e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com ©15014 www.elmoasserbooks.com



/EIMoasser.eg



